山东省普通高等教育专升本入学考试公共课辅导丛书

（依据最新考试要求编写）

2019版

英语语法、词汇

专项训练

● 师大教育　组编

● 李海燕　编著

✔ 紧扣大纲

✔ 直击考点

✔ 真题解析

✔ 讲练结合

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.com

山东省普通高等教育专升本入学考试公共课辅导丛书

（依据最新考试要求编写）

英语语法、词汇专项训练

师大教育　组编

李海燕　编著

机械工业出版社

英语是普通高等学校专科生进入本科阶段学习的必考课程，笔者对近几年山东省专升本考试进行了深入细致的研究，对语法和词汇知识进行了系统的编辑和整理，在此基础上编著了本书。

全书分为三部分内容：第一部分为考试大纲，介绍专升本英语考试要求及试题构成，深度透析真题，帮助考生准确把握考试难度、题型构成与发展变化；第二部分为语法、词汇精讲精练，详细讲解专升本考试涉及的语法和词汇，该部分对专升本语法和词汇讲解做到了面面俱到，纵横比较，并配有专项训练和综合练习及详解，便于同学们更好地理解和掌握；第三部分为专升本英语高频词汇必备，主要涉及专升本英语考试常用词汇，并配有汉语注释和例句，帮助考生记忆。

本书不仅有助于参加各级各类考试的考生尤其是专科生更好地备考，还可以作为广大读者巩固课堂知识的课外自学用书。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

英语语法、词汇专项训练/李海燕编著. —北京：机械工业出版社，2018.7

（山东省普通高等教育专升本入学考试公共课辅导丛书）

依据最新考试要求编写

ISBN 978-7-111-60293-4

Ⅰ.①英… Ⅱ.①李… Ⅲ.①英语－语法－高等学校－教学参考资料②英语－词汇－高等学校－教学参考资料 Ⅳ.①H319.39

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2018）第 137302 号

机械工业出版社（北京市百万庄大街 22 号　邮政编码 100037）

策划编辑：张金奎　责任编辑：张金奎

封面设计：张　静　责任印制：张　博

三河市国英印务有限公司印刷

2018 年 7 月第 1 版第 1 次印刷

184mm×260mm · 12 印张 · 332 千字

标准书号：ISBN 978-7-111-60293-4

定价：29.80 元

凡购本书，如有缺页、倒页、脱页，由本社发行部调换

服务咨询热线：010-88361066

封面无防伪标均为盗版

前　言

本书是一本集语法、词汇等专项训练于一体的综合教程。本书的编写目标是为大学生介绍英语学习的策略和方法，指明重点，解决难点，阐释疑点，扫除盲点，并集知识传授和方法点拨于一体，既授之以“鱼”，又授之以“渔”，可使学生少走弯路，达到事半功倍的效果。本书不仅可以帮助参加各级各类考试的考生尤其是专科生更好地备考，还可以作为广大读者巩固课堂知识的课外自学用书。本书在正式出版之前，已在山东潍坊科技学院进行了试用，以极强的实用性受到了广大师生的欢迎和认可。

本书以《山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试大纲》为指导，结合英语教学的实际情况，在对历年专升本考试试题进行认真分析与研究的基础上编写而成。全书由三部分构成：第一部分为考试大纲，介绍专升本英语考试要求及试题构成，深度透析真题，帮助考生准确把握考试难度、题型构成与发展变化；第二部分为语法、词汇精讲精练，详细讲解专升本考试涉及的语法和词汇，并配有专项训练和综合练习及详解；第三部分为专升本英语高频词汇必备，主要涉及专升本英语考试常用词汇，并配有汉语注释，帮助考生记忆。

本书主要特色如下。

1. 本书的编者为多年从事英语课堂教学的一线教师，熟悉考试大纲和考生的需要，深谙考试命题的原则、思路和最新考试动态。

2. 全书紧扣考试大纲，结合多年命题研究经验编写而成，具有很强的实战性和针对性。

3. 本书将大纲要求、考试要点、强化训练等巧妙地结合在一起，大大方便了学生复习。其重点内容突出，知识脉络分明，条理清楚，便于学生全面复习，重点把握。

4. 本书在编写的过程中特别注意了各个章节部分的协调和衔接，既注重知识的全面系统，又注重其实用性，力求章章完美，节节优秀，做到了知识点不多、不重、不漏。

同步训练：本书在知识讲解过程中，设计了大量的同步专项训练，便于知识的学习和巩固。

由于编者经验有限，书中难免有疏漏和不足之处，欢迎广大学者、老师和同学们提出批评意见和宝贵建议。

编　者

2018 年 4 月

目　录

前言

第一部分　考 试 大 纲

第一章　考试概述 …… 1
第二章　考试大纲 …… 3
第三章　样题及详解 …… 6

第二部分　语法、词汇精讲精练

第一章　语法结构 …… 21
第一节　时态 …… 21
第二节　被动语态 …… 27
第三节　复合从句 …… 31
第四节　虚拟语气 …… 52
第五节　非谓语动词 …… 62
第六节　情态动词 …… 87
第七节　形容词、副词 …… 92
第八节　倒装、强调、反义疑问句 …… 98
第九节　主谓一致 …… 105
第二章　语法专项练习 …… 113
第三章　词汇知识 …… 121
第一节　词汇考查重点 …… 121
第二节　常用词汇构成法 …… 122
第四章　词汇专项练习 …… 126
第五章　语法、词汇综合练习及详解 …… 139

第三部分　专升本英语高频词汇必备

专升本必备系列：英语高频词组（一） …… 158
专升本必备系列：英语高频词组（二） …… 166
专升本必备系列：英语高频词组（三） …… 172

第一部分　考 试 大 纲

第一章

考 试 概 述

自 2011 年起，山东省普通高等教育专升本考试取消了学分互认专升本考试（即校内专升本），此前已把跨校类专升本考试及面向社会专升本考试统一为普通专升本考试（含师范类和高职类），在每年 12 月份或次年 1 月份举行全省统一考试。考试科目分为公共课和专业综合课两种：公共课包括公共英语（英语专业考生为大学语文）和计算机（计算机专业考生为高等数学），每门成绩为 100 分；专业综合课根据考生报考的专业由主考院校确定，每门成绩满分不超过 150 分。其中，公共课为统考科目，实行全省统一命题、统一阅卷，并规定最低控制分数线，达到分数线的考生，方可进入录取序列。

山东省专升本英语考试的命题主要依据教育部颁发的《高职高专教育英语课程教学基本要求（试行）》（以下简称《基本要求》）进行，同时根据省内考生在公共英语方面的实际能力以及招生录取工作的具体情况，对每年的题型及难度做出调整。由于大纲颁布距今已有 10 年时间，其规定难度已无法对学生的英文水平进行全面准确的考查，加上历年来命题过程中对具体题型不断进行调整，实考试题的题型构成也有了较大变化。因此，考生需要重点关注以往几年山东省专升本英语考试的真题，以便清晰把握考试的题型构成、难度系数以及考查重点等。

目前，山东省专升本公共英语考试的具体题型构成根据实际情况调整如下：考试基本题型保持听力理解（Listening Comprehension）、词汇用法和语法结构（Vocabulary and Structure）、阅读理解（Reading Comprehension）、翻译（Translation）、写作（Writing）五部分不变。其中听力部分包括的题型有简短对话（Short Conversations）、长对话（Long Conversations）、短文听力（Short Passages）和听写填空（Spot Dictation）四种，每年从中选取三种或四种题型进行考查，分值为 20 分。词汇与语法结构部分取消了大纲样题中 A 节对词性转换的考查，仅保留了 B 节单项选择题，同时在单选题增加了对词汇搭配、词义辨析的考查。词汇与语法结构部分目前一般为 30 题，分值为 15 分。阅读理解部分的题型包括阅读选择题、阅读简答题、业务交际英语理解三种，每年从中选取两种或三种题型进行考查，分值为 30 分。翻译部分仍然包括英译汉、汉译英两部分，共 10 题，分值为 20 分。其中 A 节英译汉部分的英文句子不再完全出自试题的阅读理解文章，部分句子来自试题之外。写作部分的要求有所提高，字数由大纲中的规定不低于 80 词提高到不低于 120 词，体裁和题材均有较大的扩展。目前的考查形式有书信、标题作文、提纲作文等，分值为 15 分。

随着各院校英语教学水平的不断提高，近年来参加专升本考试的考生英语能力有了较大提高，

试题的难度也逐年增大。目前试题难度已远高于大纲样题的难度，大体介于高等学校英语应用能力考试 A 级（PRETCO A）与大学英语三级（CET 3）考试之间。这一难度能够比较好地反映出考生的实际英文水平，较好地控制了过线学生人数，实现了选拔优秀学生进入本科阶段学习的目标。同时，考试整体难度的增加，也反映在对考生词汇量的要求上。目前我省的专升本考试中，公共英语方面要求学生达到的词汇量大约在 3 800 词左右，也已超出大纲中规定的 3 400 词的上限。

第二章

考 试 大 纲

山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试大纲

山东省教育厅高等教育处审定

一、总则

教育部颁发的《基本要求》指出："语言测试在考核英语知识的同时，应着重考核学生实际运用语言的能力，要做到科学、公平和规范。"同时指出："考虑到目前学生入学英语水平的差异，教学和测试分 A、B 两级。"山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试大纲就是根据这一要求而设计的。鉴于我省实际情况，目前，山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试的内容以《基本要求》所规定的 B 级内容为主。待条件成熟后，再进行 A 级的统一考试。这种考试属于尺度参照性考试。

高职高专英语课程的教学目的是："经过 180 ~ 220 学时的教学，使学生掌握一定的英语基础知识和技能，具有一定的听、说、读、写、译的能力，从而能借助词典阅读和翻译有关英语业务资料，在涉外交际的日常活动和业务中进行简短的口头和书写交流，并为今后进一步提高英语的交际能力打下基础。"整个教学过程遵循"实用为主，够用为度"的原则，"强调打好语言基础和培养语言应用能力并重；强调语言基本技能的训练和培养实际从事涉外交际活动的语言应用能力并重。""目前要特别注意加强听说技能的培养。"为此，本考试主要考核学生听和读的理解能力、翻译与写作的应用能力，同时也对词语用法、语法结构的掌握程度进行考核。

本考试目前只进行笔试。但为了贯彻《基本要求》的精神，我们把客观性试题和主观性试题的比例做了较大调整，有原来的 7∶3 调整为 5.5∶4.5，考试时间为 120 分钟，满分 100 分。

二、应考对象和考试要求

考试对象为高职、高专、五年一贯制高专和成人专科修完 220 学时英语课程的学生。他们应掌握 3 400 个单词和一定数量的词组的意义及基本用法，应具有实际运用语法的能力，能够阅读和翻译一般题材和涉外业务的文字材料，能够听懂一般的对话和短文，并能写简单的关于日常生活的短文和业务应用文。

三、考试内容

B 级考试的内容以《基本要求》的四个附表，即交际范围表、语言技能表、语法结构表、词汇表为依据。考试包括五个部分：听力理解、词语用法和语法结构、阅读理解、翻译和写作。全

部题目按序列统一编号。

第一部分：听力理解（Part Ⅰ Listening Comprehension）

共20题，考试时间为15分钟。这一部分包括3节。A节（Section A）共5题，每题含一组对话，共两句，读一遍，对话后有一个问句。B节（Section B）读一遍，共5题，分别安排在两篇听力材料之后，每篇后有2~3题，每题为一个问句。C节（Section C）为听写填空或简答题。听写填空：共10题，试卷上给出的160词左右的短文，其中有10个空格，每个空格要求填入一个词或短语，全文读三遍。简答题：共5题，试卷上给出200词左右的短文，全文朗读两遍。第一遍按正常语速朗读，第二遍语速稍慢，要求考生在会意和听懂的基础上做出简约的回答。听力部分的语速正常情况下为每分钟110词左右。本部分的测试目的是检查考生获取口头信息和书面表达的综合能力。

选材的原则是：

对话部分为日常交际对话，句子结构较为简单。

短文听力材料为题材熟悉、情节较为简单的短文。

听写填空材料为日常生活或较为简单的关于涉外活动的短文。

第二部分：词语用法和语法结构（Part Ⅱ Vocabulary and Structure）

共30题，考试时间为20分钟。这一部分包括两节：A节（Section A）为词语的用法，共10题，要求考生用括号中所给词的适当形式填空。B节（Section B）为语法结构，共20题，要求考生从每题四个选项中选出一个最佳答案。本部分的测试目的是检查学生对词语用法和语法结构的掌握程度。

第三部分：阅读理解（Part Ⅲ Reading Comprehension）

共20题，4节内容，考试时间为35分钟，要求考生按照指令完成各项任务。第一节和第二节为短文理解，考生可根据文章内容从每题四个选择项中选出最佳答案；第三节为业务交际英语理解，首先以字母为序给出若干常用英语业务交际用语，然后打乱顺序以数字为序给出部分汉语翻译，要求考生把意义相同的英汉用语匹配到一起，以检查学生对英语基本业务用语的掌握程度；第四节是应用文理解，给出一篇或两篇应用文，要求考生对所提问题做出简单回答，目的是考查学生对广告、说明书、业务信函、合同等常见应用文的理解能力和初步的应用能力。

选材的原则是：题材广泛，包括社会文化、日常生活、科普常识、商贸经济等，所涉及的背景和知识是学生了解和熟悉的。体裁多样，为记叙文、说明文、议论文、应用文等。文章难度适中，如有超出《基本要求》所规定的词汇且影响理解的，则用汉语注明词义。

第四部分：翻译（Part Ⅳ Translation）

共10题，考试时间为20分钟。这一部分包括两节：A节（Section A）为英译汉，共5题，要求将阅读理解材料中有标号的5个划线句子译成汉语。本节的测试目的是检查学生对常用句型和词语的综合理解和运用能力。B节（Section B）为汉译英，给出5个单句或包含5个句子的短文。本节的测试目的是检查考生实际运用语言的综合能力。

第五部分：写作（Part Ⅴ Writing）

考试时间为30分钟。要求考生写出80~100词的短文，写作内容为日常生活题材或简单的业务交际短文。试卷上可能给出题目，或规定情景，或要求写请柬、个人简历、通知等应用文。短文要求格式基本正确，能基本表达思想，意思连贯，无重大语法错误。本部分的测试目的是检查学生的英语书面表达能力。

四、试卷各部分的题目、记分和考试时间

序号	题号	名　　称	题数	记分	时间
Ⅰ	1 ~ 20	听力理解	20 题	20 分	15 分钟
Ⅱ	21 ~ 50	词语用法和语法结构	30 题	15 分	20 分钟
Ⅲ	51 ~ 70	阅读理解	20 题	30 分	35 分钟
Ⅳ	71 ~ 80	翻译	10 题	20 分	20 分钟
Ⅴ		写作	1 题	15 分	30 分钟
合计			81 题	100 分	120 分钟

备注：

1. 每年的考试时间根据山东省考试院公示的为准。
2. 听力部分的题型每年会稍有变化，以真题为准。
3. 阅读部分的题型近几年稍有不同，共有 2 节内容，基本题型为选择题和匹配题，阅读简答题和业务交际英语理解已取消，以真题为准。

第三章

样题及详解

山东省普通高等教育专升本考试公共英语模拟试题及详解

试卷一

（考试时间：120 分钟）

注意事项：

一、本试卷分为试卷一、试卷二两部分。

二、将自己的姓名、准考证号码写在试卷和答题卡的相应位置上。考试结束后，把试卷和答题卡放在桌面上。教师收卷后才可以离开考场。试卷和答题卡均不得带走。

三、仔细读懂题目说明。

四、在 120 分钟内答完全部试题，不得拖延时间。

五、试卷一的答案必须填涂在答题卡上，凡写在试卷上的答案一律无效；试卷上所有题目必须在试卷上作答。

第一部分：听力理解（本大题共 20 小题，每小题 1 分，共 20 分）

Part Ⅰ Listening Comprehension（20 points，1 point each）

Section A

Directions：In this section，you will hear 8 short conversations and 2 long conversations. At the end of each conversation，one or more questions will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause，you must read the four choices marked A，B，C and D and decide which is the best answer. Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

Short Conversations

1. A. He has changed his plan. B. He has canceled his trip.
   C. He is arriving this afternoon. D. He forgot to arrange his trip.
2. A. Awaitress. B. A salesgirl. C. A housewife. D. Areception.
3. A. 9：00. B. 9：10. C. 9：20. D. 9：30.
4. A. The woman is sick. B. The woman has to work.
   C. The woman has to go to the party. D. The woman doesn't want to go the party.
5. A. The man didn't notice her in the hallway. B. There was an announcement in the hallway.
   C. The meeting will be on Friday. D. The meeting has been canceled.
6. A. She is very much afraid. B. She has never heard of the place.

C. She is not familiar with the place. D. She has never taken the bus before.

7. A. The new teacher is ill. B. She hasn't met the new teacher yet.
C. She doesn't want to meet the new teacher. D. She doesn't feel well.

8. A. Not go shopping downtown. B. Guard her money.
C. Look for a new wallet. D. Not to take the train.

Long Conversation One

Questions 9 to 11 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

9. A. He isn't very well.
B. He has some trouble in his study.
C. He feels lonely living in Britain.
D. He is not accustomed to the weather and food in the country.

10. A. Because he seldom goes out.
B. Because English people seldom go out.
C. Because he lives at a place where there are few English people.
D. Because he is busy studying.

11. A. Peter's English is too poor.
B. English people hate to be talked to.
C. He never speaks first.
D. He often asks stupid questions.

Long Conversation Two

Questions 12 to 14 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

12. A. A common habit. B. A common behavior.
C. A learned behavior. D. A learned habit.

13. A. She is shy when speaking in front of people.
B. She forgot to prepare the class.
C. She made a serious mistake in front of people.
D. She forgot to give a presentation.

14. A. He looks like children.
B. He feels very nervous when somebody is waiting for him.
C. He likes history very much.
D. He blushes frequently.

Section B

Directions: In this section, you will hear 2 passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choices marked A, B, C, and D. Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

Passage One

Questions 15 to 17 are based on the passage you have just heard.

15. A. The matter is somewhat important. B. It is a matter of life and death.
C. You are getting people into trouble. D. You are not considerate.

16. A. In social life. B. In school life. C. In private life. D. In daily life.

17. A. Because they speak different language.

B. Because they use different gestures.

C. Because they understand the meaning of time differently.

D. Because they have different educational background.

Passage Two

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the passage you have just heard.

18. A. Dijon. B. Paris. C. France. D. America.

19. A. In the airplane. B. In the ship. C. In the bus. D. In the train.

20. A. Mark Twain was very hot-tempered.

B. The conductor was quite careless.

C. The service on the train was bad.

D. The man who was put off the train was a little bit angry.

第二部分：词汇和语法结构（本大题共 30 小题，每小题 0.5 分，共 15 分）

Part Ⅱ Vocabulary and Structure（15 points，0.5 pint each）

Directions：There are 30 incomplete sentences in this part. For each sentence there are four choices marked A，B，C and D. Choose the ONE answer that best completes the sentence. Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

21. You have nothing to ________ by refusing our advice.

A. gain B. grasp C. seize D. earn

22. The accident ________ him of his sight and the use of his legs.

A. derived B. disabled C. deprived D. seized

23. She was so ________ in her job that she didn't hear anybody knocking at the door.

A. absorbed B. attracted C. drawn D. concentrated

24. I ________ a long pole in the center of the field，and on top of it I hung the lamp.

A. put up B. put on C. put out D. put up with

25. A good friend is one who will ________ you when you are in trouble.

A. stand for B. stand by C. stand up to D. stand up with

26. It was in the year 1925 ________ John Biard found a way to send pictures by wireless equipment.

A. when B. that C. which D. until

27. It was essential that all the necessary documents ________ to the president's office before the end of this month.

A. be handed in B. should hand in C. must be handed in D. had been handed in

28. I don't like watching football games，and ________ .

A. she doesn't too B. either doesn't she C. neither does she D. she doesn't neither

29. This year we will produce ________ they did last year.

A. as twice many cars as B. twice as many cars than

C. twice as many cars as D. cars twice as many that

30. In some countries，________ is called "equality" does not really mean equal rights for all people.

A. which B. what C. that D. one

31. ________ might be expected the response to the question was very mixed.

A. As B. That C. It D. What

32. Police have ________ to the public to come forward with any information which might help them in their inquiries.

A. urged B. appealed C. claimed D. called

33. Why don't you have a night out? It would take your ________ off your worries.

A. cares B. head C. heart D. mind

34. As a ________ president, his views are treated with respect when he was interviewed.

A. prior B. late C. previous D. former

35. I felt somewhat disappointed and was about to leave, ________ something occurred which attracted my attention.

A. unless B. until C. when D. while

36. ________, you are welcome to join in our discussion.

A. No matter what are your opinions B. Whatever your opinions are

C. No matter whatever your opinions are D. No matter your opinions are

37. His explanation ________ he didn't see the notice is unsatisfactory.

A. which B. as C. that D. what

38. Realizing that he hadn't enough money and ________ to borrow from his father, he decided to sell his watch.

A. not wanted B. no to want C. not wanting D. wanting not

39. He is the only one of the sons in the family who ________ received higher education.

A. are B. is C. have D. has

40. I suppose that when I come back in ten years' time all these old houses ________ down.

A. will have been pulled B. will have pulled

C. will be pulling D. will be pulled

41. When I caught him ________ I stopped buying things there and started dealing with another shop.

A. cheating B. cheat C. to cheat D. to be cheating

42. Most parents encourage their children to take an active part in social events, ________ those events do not interfere with their studies.

A. lest B. unless C. though D. provided

43. ________ for my illness, I would have lent him a helping hand.

A. Not being B. Had it not been C. Without being D. Not having been

44. Only one little boy ________ the accident; everyone else was killed.

A. survived B. submitted C. suffered D. succeed

45. I don't know whether what she said is true, but I'll try to ________ it.

A. confine B. confess C. conform D. confirm

46. Children who are over-protected by their parents may become ________.

A. hurt B. damaged C. spoiled D. harmed

47. The boat ________, throwing the boys into the water.

A. turned on B. turned down C. turned off D. turn over

48. The teacher asked a difficult question, but finally Ted ________ a good instead.

A. came up to B. came up for D. came up with D. came up against

49. Not long ago, a person whom I know very well was ________ an accident.

A. related to B. included in C. involved in D. subject to

50. I will give you such information ________ help you in your study.

A. as will B. as it will C. that will D. which will

第三部分：阅读理解（本大题共20小题，每小题1.5分，共30分）。

Part Ⅲ Reading Comprehension（30 points，1.5points each）

Section A

Directions：There are 3 passages in this part. Each passage is followed by some questions or unfinished statements. For each of them there are four choices marked A，B，C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

Passage One

One hundred and thirteen million Americans have at least one bank-issued credit card. They give their owners automatic credit in stores，restaurants，and hotels，at home，across the country，and even abroad，and they make many banking services available as well. More and more of these credit cards can be read automatically，making it possible to withdraw or deposit money in scattered locations，whether or not the local branch bank is open. For many of us the "cashless society" is not on the horizon—it's already here.

While computer offer these conveniences to consumers，they have many advantages for sellers too. Electronic cash registers can do much more than simply ring up sales. They can keep a wide range of records，including who sold what，when and to whom. This information allows businessmen to keep track of their list of goods by showing which items are being sold and how far they are moving. Decisions to reorder or return goods to suppliers can then be made. At the same time these computers record which hours are busiest and which employees are the most efficient，allowing personnel and staffing assignments to be made accordingly. And they also identify preferred customer for promotional campaigns. Computers are relied on by manufacturers for similar reasons. Computer analyzed marketing reports can help to decide which products to emphasize now，which to develop for the future and which to drop. Computers keep track of goods in stock，of raw materials on hand，and even of the production process itself.

Numerous other commercial enterprises，from theaters to magazine publishers，from gas and electric utilities to milk processors，bring better and more efficient services to consumers through the use of computers.

51. According to the passage，the credit card enables its owner to ________.
    A. withdraw as much money from the bank as he wishes
    B. obtain more convenient services than other people do
    C. enjoy great trust from the storekeeper
    D. cash money where he wished to
52. From the last sentence of the first paragraph we learn that ________.
    A. in the future all the Americans will use credit cards
    B. credit cards are mainly used in the United States today
    C. nowadays many Americans do not pay in cash
    D. it is now more convenient to use credit cards than before
53. The phrase "ring up sales" most probably means ________.
    A. make an order of goods　　B. record sales on a cash register
    C. call the sales manager　　D. keep track of the goods in stock
54. What is this passage mainly about?
    A. Approaches to the commercial use of computers.
    B. Conveniences brought about by computer in business.
    C. Significance of automation in commercial enterprise.
    D. Advantages of credit cards in business.

Passage Two

Most personnel managers agree that job interviews are one of the least objective recruitment methods. But the advantages of testing are not going to change the attraction of the interview to employers. The appeal of the interview has everything to do with the human factor.

Most people believe they are a reasonable judge of character and trust their instinctive feelings. We might use some kind of test to aid the selection process, but we usually pick a candidate who interviews will, has good qualifications and an impressive work record.

But suppose the candidate lies or is less than completely honest, "This can be a serious problem for employers," explains Alan Conrad, Chief Executive at Optimus Recruitment. "The most difficult liars to find out those who tell half-truths rather than complete lies." Research shows that up to 75 percent of resumes are inaccurate on purpose. The most common practice is omission.

Interviewer should therefore concentrate on areas of uncertainty such as gaps between periods of employment and job descriptions that seem strange. "Focusing on these areas will force candidates to tell the truth or become increasingly dishonest. This is usually when people signal their anxiety by their body language. Sweat on the upper lip, false smiles and nervous hand movements all indicate discomfort."

Conrad does not suggest an aggressive policy-style interview technique, but insists that close inspection of a resume is absolutely essential. <u>Only by asking the right questions can you confirm the suitability of the candidate or put pressure on those who are being less than completely honest</u>.

55. The best title of this passage can be ________.
    A. How to Catch Out the Dishonest Candidate
    B. How to Find a Job by Tricks
    C. Disadvantages of Job Interviews
    D. Advantages of Job Interviews
56. The liars hard to recognize are those who tell ________.
    A. complete truths　B. complete lies　C. partial truths　D. mainly truths
57. How were the job applicants able to lie without being detected?
    A. By leaving out some necessary information.
    B. By providing more information than needed.
    C. By using their body language.
    D. By telling some unbelievable lies.
58. What is the author's attitude towards job interviews?
    A. Most objective.　B. Too subjective.　C. Suspicious.　D. Credulous.

Passage Three

Tokyo is one of those places that you can love and hate at the same time.

In Tokyo there are always too many people in the places where I want to go. Of course there are too many cars. The Japanese drive very fast, but in Tokyo they often spend a long time in traffic jams. Tokyo is not different from London, Paris and New York in that, it is different when one wants to walk. At certain times of the day there are a lot of people on foot in London's Oxford Street. But the streets near the Ginze in Tokyo always have a lot of people on foot, and sometimes it is really difficult to walk. People are very polite; there are just too many of them. The worst time to be in the street is at 11:30 at night. That is when the night-clubs are closing and everybody wants to go home. There are 35, 000 night-clubs in Tokyo, and you do not often see one that is empty.

During the day, most people travel to and from work by train. Tokyo people buy six million train tickets every day. At most stations, trains arrive every two or three minutes, but at certain hours there do not seem to be enough trains. Although they are usually crowded, Japanese trains are very good. They always leave and arrive on time. On a London train you would see everybody reading a newspaper. In Tokyo trains everybody in a seat seems to be asleep, whether his journey is long or short.

In Tokyo, I stood outside the station for five minutes. Three fire-engines raced past on the way to one of the many fires that Tokyo has every day. Tokyo has so many surprises that none of them can really surprise me now.

59. According to the passage, Tokyo is different from in that ________.

A. it has a larger population

B. it is a bigger city

C. it is more difficult to go somewhere on foot

D. its people are friendlier and more polite

60. What time does the writer think is the worst time to go into the street?

A. When the nightclubs are closing. B. Eight o'clock in the morning.

C. When the train is overcrowded. D. When people travel to and from work.

61. What does the writer say about Japanese trains?

A. They are very nice and comfortable. B. There are not enough trains.

C. They often run behind schedule. D. They leave and arrive on schedule.

62. From the writer's observation, we can see that fires break out ________.

A. quite frequently B. very rarely

C. occasionally D. only several times a day

Section B Matching

63. 再过一个月就是圣诞节了，但悲哀的是麦克唐纳家的房子里似乎缺少了点圣诞气息。 64. 我们在这里为在大学做志愿服务提供充足的理由，因为当你制定计划的时候，也许还有一些社区服务的益处没有考虑到。 65. 史密斯教授明天的演讲很重要。如果你想通过期末考试的话最好在演讲时不要让自己的思想开小差。 66. 从小让孩子接触古典音乐有助于培养良好的性情。	A. We are here to make a case for volunteerism in college, as there may be some benefits to community service that you haven't yet considered when drawing up those schedules. B. With Christmas only a month away, the McDonald house seemed sadly lacking in Christmas spirit. C. Exposing children to classical music helps to build up their good temperament. D. The lecture to be given by Professor Smith tomorrow is very important. If you wish to pass the final exam you'd better not let your mind wander during the lecture.

67. 但是卡车很大，并且载重很多；它们被人们接受是因为它们提供了人们需要的服务，使美国向前发展。 68. 只有当研究者获得充分的数据，他们才能得出一个正确的结论。 69. 老师的南方口音太重，我怎么听也不明白他在说什么。 70. 至于计算机化的影响，没有什么地方比银行能更清楚地看到其成果。	A. Only when the researchers have obtained sufficient data can they come to a sound conclusion. B. But trucks are big and carry heavy load; they are accepted because they perform a needed service, making America move. C. I listened hard but still failed to make out what the teacher was saying because of his strong southern accent. D. As for the influence of computerization, nowhere have we seen the results more clearly than in the bank.

试卷二

Part Ⅳ Translation (20 points, 2 points each)

Section A: English to Chinese

71. More and more of these credit cards can be read automatically, making it possible to withdraw or deposit money in scattered locations, whether or not the local branch bank is open.

---

72. This information allows businessmen to keep track of their list of goods by showing which items are being sold and how far they are moving.

---

73. Most personnel managers agree that job interviews are one of the least objective recruitment methods.

---

74. Only by asking the right questions can you confirm the suitability of the candidate or put pressure on those who are being less than completely honest.

---

75. On a London train you would see everybody reading a newspaper. In Tokyo trains everybody in a seat seems to be asleep, whether his journey is long or short.

Section B Chinese to English

76. 苏迪悄悄地告诉我，说那个留着长长的红色头发、看上去像艺术家的年轻人是她的表哥。

---

77. 除了有趣和是一种很好的锻炼，游泳是一项十分有用的技能。

---

78. 约翰和他的家人依靠微薄的收入勉强生活。

---

79. 成千上万的游客把通向塔顶的台阶都踏得磨损了。

---

80. 令人奇怪的是如此无知的人竟然被认为是一个学者。

Part Ⅴ Writing (15 points)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition entitled ***What Can be Done to Tackle the Haze Problem?*** You should write at least 120 words according to the following Chinese outline.

(1) 描述雾霾天气这一现象及其危害。

(2) 分析雾霾天气产生的原因。

(3) 提出应对雾霾天气的建议。

听力原文及答案详解

Ⅰ. **Listening Comprehension** (20 points)

1—5 A D B B B 6—10 C B B B A 11—15 C A D C B 16—20 A C A D B

Section A

1. M: Shall we go to the airport to meet Dr. Smith this afternoon?
W: Oh, I forgot to tell you. He has put off his trip.
Q: What do we know about Dr. Smith?
2. W: Good morning, Hilton Hotel. May I help you?
M: I'd like some information about your hotel.
Q: What is the woman?
3. W: When is the show supposed to start?
M: Don't worry. It doesn't start until 9: 30, we've still got 20 minutes.
Q: What's the time now?
4. M: The International Students Association is having a party on Saturday night. Can you go?
W: I wish I could, but I work at the hospital on weekends.
Q: What do we learn from the conversation?
5. M: I wonder when they will reschedule the meeting. I hope it is not on Friday.
W: Didn't you see the notice in the hallway?
Q: What does the woman mean?
6. M: Excuse me. Can you tell me if this bus goes to Victoria Station?
W: No, I'm afraid I can't. I've only been there a few days myself.
Q: Why can't the woman give the man directions?
7. M: Did you meet our new teacher yesterday?
W: I've been sick for three days.
Q: What's the woman trying to tell the man?
8. W: I'm taking the train downtown to go shopping.
M: Well, you'd better keep an eye on your wallet.
Q: What does the man advise the woman to do?

Now you'll hear two long conversations.

Conversation One

W: What's the matter, Peter? You don't look very happy.
M: I'm not I'm worried about my English.
W: What's the problem?
M: I'm not practicing enough.
W: Why not?
M: Well, I seldom have chances to meet English people.
W: You should go out more.
M: Where should I go?
W: You should go to pubs, you should join a club.

M: But... English people never speak to me.

W: Ah! You should speak first.

M: What can I talk about?

W: The weather! English people are always interested in the weather.

Questions 9 to 11 arc based on the conversation you have just heard.

9. Which of the following is TRUE about Peter?

10. Why doesn't Peter have many chances to meet English people?

11. Why does Peter say that English people never speak to him?

Conversation Two

M: Hi, Sarah. What's up?

W: Oh, hi, I just got out of history class. I had to give a presentation.

M: How did it go?

W: Terribly. I'm sure I made a fool of myself.

M: Why? Weren't you prepared?

W: No, it was not that. It's just I get so embarrassed and nervous whenever I have to speak in front of a group of people. I stand up and my face gets red and then I get even more nervous because I know everyone can see me blushing.

M: It's not so bad to blush.

W: But it happens all the time. If the professor asks a question and I know the answer, I blush like crazy if he calls on me. Doesn't that ever happen to you?

M: No, not really. Maybe you should just try to forget about the people. Look at something else in the room like the exit sign.

W: I guess I could try that but I doubt it'll help.

M: You know, we talked about it in psychology class. Blushing, even though it's involuntary, is more or less a learned behavior.

W: What do you mean?

M: Oh, children hardly ever blush at all. And among adults, supposedly, women blush more than men.

W: I wonder why.

M: I don't know, but I had a friend at high school, Brian Smith. It was really easy to make him blush. He turned red whenever a waitress would ask him for his order.

W: I'm not that bad. Well, I've got to get going for my next class. I'll take to you later.

Questions 12 to 14 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

12. What's the psychological view on blushing?

13. Why does the woman think the class went terribly?

14. What does the man say about Brian Smith?

Section B

Passage One

In the United States, it is not customary to telephone someone very early in the morning. If you telephone him early in the day, while he is shaving or having breakfast, it shows that the matter is very important and requires immediate attention. The same meaning is attached to telephone calls made after 11:00 p.m. If someone receives a call during sleeping hours, he assumes it's a matter of life and death. The time

chosen for the call indicates its importance.

In social life, time plays a very important part. In the United States guests tend to feel they are not highly regarded if the invitation to a dinner party is extended only three or four days before the party date. But it is not true in all countries. In other areas of the world, it may be considered foolish to make an appointment too far in advance because plans which are made for a date more than a week away tend to be forgotten. The meaning of the time differs in different parts of the world. Thus, misunderstanding can arise between people from cultures that treat time differently. Promptness is highly valued in American life, for example, if people are not prompt, they may be regarded as impolite or not truly responsible.

Questions 15 to 17 are based on the passage you have just heard.

15. What would it mean if you phone somebody late at night?

16. In what aspect of life does time play an important role according to the passage?

17. Why can misunderstanding arise between people from different cultures according to this passage?

Passage Two

Mark Twain, the famous American writer, was once traveling in France. He went by train to Dijon. He was very tired and wanted to sleep. Therefore he asked the conductor to wake him up when the train came to Dijon.

But first he explained that he was a very heavy sleeper. "I may possibly protest loudly when you try to wake me up," he said to the conductor, "But don't take notice, just put me off the train any way."

Then Mark Twain went to sleep. Later, when he woke up it was nighttime and the train had reached Paris already. He realized at once that the conductor had forgotten to wake him up at Dijon. He was so angry that he ran up to the conductor and began to shout at him.

"I have never been so angry in all my life," Mark Twain said. The conductor looked at him calmly. "You are not half as angry as the American whom I put off the train at Dijon," he said.

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the passage you have just heard.

18. Which city did Mark Twain want to get to?

19. Where did the story take place?

20. What can you infer from the passage?

Ⅱ. Vocabulary and Structure (15 points)

21. A 本题考查词义辨析。have nothing to gain 是固定表达，本句意为：拒绝我们的劝告对你没有任何好处。

22. C 本题考查词义辨析。deprive 意为“剥夺，抢走，使丧失”，用于 derive sb. of sth. 这一结构。如：They were deprived of a normal childhood by the war. 由于战争，他们失去了一个正常的童年时代。derive 意为“起源；推理出”，derive a conclusion from the facts “从事实推出结论”。disable 意为“使残废，丧失能力”。如：An accident disabled him from playing football. 一场意外事故使他不能踢球。seize 意为“抓住”。本句意为：这场交通事故使他丧失了视力和双腿。

23. A 本题考查词义辨析。absorb 意为“引人注意，使全神贯注”；attract 意为“吸引，诱惑”，通常指被一些有趣或者美丽的东西吸引。如：We were attracted by the display of lights. 我们被灯展吸引。draw 意为“取出，引出，引起反应”；a performance that drew jeers from the audience 一场吸引观众的表演；concentrate 意为“集中，全神贯注”，但是不用于被动语态。如：We concentrated on the task before us. 我们专注于眼前的任务。本句意为：她全神贯注地沉浸在工作中，连敲门的声音都没听见。

24. A　本题考查动词短语辨析。put up 意为“树立，建立，建造”；put on 意为“穿衣服；上演”；put out 意为“熄灭；出版”；put up with 意为“忍受，忍耐”。本句意为：我在田野中间立起了一个长杆子，并在上面安装了灯。

25. B　本题考查动词短语辨析。stand by 意为“对……忠诚，帮助或者支持某人”，stand by her friends 支持她的朋友；stand for 意为“代表，象征”；stand up to 意为“勇敢面对，顶得住”；stand up with 指“在婚礼中做男或女傧相，陪伴”。本句意为：好朋友是当你有困难时，他会帮助你的人。

26. B　本题考查强调句型。虽然 in the year 1925 表示时间，但不能选 when，只能用 that，构成 It is... that.. 强调结构。本句意为：在 1925 年，约翰·毕拉德找到了一种通过无线设备发送图片的方法。

27. A　本题考查虚拟语气的用法。在 It is/was essential that... 结构中，that 引导的从句中谓语部分应使用“(should +) 动词原形”的形式。本句意为：在本月底之前，所有必要的文件都必须提交总统办公室。

28. C　本题考查倒装结构。否定副词 neither 意为“也不”，位于句首时，句子要采用倒装语序。本句意为：我不喜欢看足球节目，她也不喜欢。

29. C　本题考查英文中倍数的表达方式。倍数的常见结构为：倍数 + as + *adj.* + as。在有些情况下，表示比较范围的形容词之后还可以添加名词。如：This is twice as large a room as that one. 这个房间比那一间大一倍。本句意为：我们今年的汽车产量是去年的两倍。

30. B　本题考查名词性从句的引导词。本题为主语从句中缺失表示物的主语的情况，要使用 what 来引导。本句意为：在有些国家，所谓平等并不意味着所有人都有平等的权利。

31. A　本题考查 as 引导的定语从句。在非限制性定语从句中，as 可指代整个主句，类似于 which。但是 as 引导的定语从句通常放在句首，已经形成了固定的说法，如：as is well known to all 众所周知的是。as has been pointed out 正如曾经指出的那样。本句意为：正如预期的那样，这个问题的答案非常复杂。

32. B　本题考查词义辨析。urge 意为“催促，力劝”；appeal 意为“请求，呼吁”；claim 意为“要求，主张”；call 意为“叫喊，通话”。根据题意，本题选 B。本句意为：警方呼吁市民提供任何可能有助他们调查的信息。

33. D　本题考查词义辨析。当涉及“精神，情绪”时，一般用 mind。本句意为：为什么你不在外面玩一晚上？那样可以让你忘记烦恼。

34. D　本题考查词义辨析。prior 意为“预先的，事先的”；late 意为“晚的，晚期，后期的”；previous 意为“以前的”；former 意为“前任的，从前的”。本句意为：作为一名前总统，他的观点在接受采访时受到尊重。

35. C　本题考查连词的用法。when 作并列连词，表示当某事正在进行时，另一事件突然发生，相当于 at that time。while 多用于延续性动作，但此句的主句与从句相关的动作分别为 leave 与 occur，均为短暂性动作，因此不用 while。本句意为：我感到有些失望，正要离开，这时发生了一件引起我注意的事情。

36. B　本题考查 whatever 和 no matter what 的用法。whatever 意为“无论什么，不管什么”，在此处引导让步状语从句。whatever your opinions are = no matter what your opinions are。本句意为：无论你的意见如何，欢迎你加入我们的讨论。

37. C　本题考查同位语从句的引导词。that 引导同位语从句，解释说明 explanation 的内容。本句意为：他没有看到通知的解释是令人不满意的。

38. C　本题考查并列结构。分析句子可以看出，空格处要填的词语要与 realizing 形式一致，应

使用 wanting, not 置于非谓语动词之前。本句意为：他知道自己的钱不够，又不想从父亲那儿借钱，因此决定卖掉自己的手表。

39. D 本题考查定语从句中涉及的主谓一致问题。如果在定语从句的先行词中前出现了 the only one 一词，则定语从句中的谓语动词用单数形式。试比较：She is one of the girls who like classic music. 她是这些喜欢古典音乐的女孩中的一员。She is the only one of the girls who likes classic music. 她是这些女孩中唯一喜欢古典音乐的。本句意为：他是家里唯一一个接受过高等教育的孩子。

40. A 本题考查动词的时态与语态变化。时间状语 when I come back in ten years' time 暗示主句动作为“到将来某一时间为止”，因此应使用将来完成时。同时，these old houses 是 pull 的动作承受者，因此应用被动语态。本句意为：我想十年后我回来的时候，所有这些老房子都将被推倒了。

41. A 本题考查非谓语动词作宾语补足语的用法。短语 catch sb. doing sth. 表示“发觉某人做某事”，具有类似用法的词还有 keep，leave，set 等。如：I am sorry to keep you waiting. 很抱歉我让你一直等着。His words set me thinking. 他的话让我陷入思考。本句意为：当我发现他欺骗的时候，我就不再买东西了，开始和另一家商店打交道。

42. D 本题考查状语从句的引导词。lest 意为“唯恐，以免”，引导目的状语；unless 意为“除非”，引导条件状语；though 意为“虽然，尽管”，引导让步状语；provided 意为“倘若”，引导条件状语。本题意为：大多数家长鼓励孩子参与社会活动，只要这些活动不影响他们的学习。因此，provided（也可使用 providing）为正确选项。

43. B 本题考查介词 for 在虚拟语气中的用法，以及虚拟语气中从句省略 if 的用法。本句中主句动词使用了 would have lent...，含义是“我本可以帮他”，因而前面需要一个表示过去的非真实条件从句，可以使用 if it had not been for，for 表示“因为”。B 选项是省略了 if 后的条件句的形式。本句意为：如果不是因为我的病，我就会帮他一把。

44. A 本题考查词义辨析。survive 为及物动词，表示“比……活得长，从困境中活过来”；submit 意为“屈服；提交”，一般用于 submit to 结构中；suffer 意为“受……之苦”，一般用于 suffer from 结构中；succeed 意为“成功”。本题意为：只有一名小男孩在事故中幸存，其他人都遇难了。

45. D 本题考查形近词辨析，confine 意为“限制，禁闭”；confess 意为“承认，坦白”；conform 意为“使一致，符合”；confirm 意为“确认”。本句意为：我不知道她说的是不是实话，我会尽量证实一下。

46. C 本题考查词义辨析。hurt 意为“伤害”；damage 意为“损坏”；spoil 意为“宠坏”；harm 意为“伤害，损害”。本句意为：受到父母过度保护的孩子可能会被宠坏。

47. D 本题考查动词短语辨析。turn over 意为“翻转；移交”；turn sth. on 意为“打开（电视、收音机等）”；turn sth. down 意为“调低；婉言谢绝”；turn sth. off 意为“关掉”。本句意为：小船翻了，孩子们都掉进了水里。

48. C 本题考查动词短语辨析。come up with sth 表示“提出或想出（答案、方法、计划等）”；come up to sth. 意为“达到（认可的水平或标准）”；come up for sth. 表示“做某事的申请人或候选人”；come up against sb./sth. 表示“面对某人/某事物”。本句意为：老师提出了一个很难的问题，但最后泰德想出了一个很好的答案。

49. C 本题考查动词短语辨析。related to 意为“与……有关”；included in 意为“被包括，被包容”；involve 意为“使卷入，使陷入”，主语为人时，谓语使用 be involved in 形式。be subject to 意为“经受”。本句意为：不久前，我很熟悉的一个人发生了意外。

50. A 本题考查“such + *n.*”后使用定语从句的用法。当定语从句的先行词前有 such 修饰时，关系代词用 as，在从句中作主语或宾语。本句意为：我会给你这些信息，帮助你学习。

Ⅲ. Reading Comprehension（30 points）

Section A Passage One

51. B 推理判断题。从第一段第二句“They give their owners automatic credit in stores, restaurants, and hotels, at home, across the country, and even abroad, and they make many banking services available as well.”可知，信用卡持有者能够在很多地方进行自由消费，而且还可以在很多地方存取款。由此可推知，信用卡能够带给人们很多方便。

52. C 推理判断题。从第一段最后一句“For many of us the ‘cashless society’ is not on the horizon——it's already here.”可知，对很多人来说，“无现金社会”已经成为现实。由此可推知，如今很多人不用现金付款。

53. B 词语理解题。从第二段第二、三句“Electronic cash registers can do much more than simply ring up sales. They can keep a wide range of records...”可知，电子收款机不止简单地用来记录销售额，ring up sales 指“记录销售额”。

54. B 主旨大意题。通读全文可知，电子收款机与信用卡的使用都是计算机在商业上应用的实例，本文旨在指出计算机的应用给使用者带来的诸多方便。

Passage Two

55. A 主旨大意题。本文主要讲述了面试者如何发现不诚实的应聘者。第三段开头的 but 一词表明前面两段的作用，引出主题，因而不能错把这两段的内容当作本文的中心思想。故 A 项为正确答案。

56. C 事实细节题。根据第三段第二句“The most difficult liars to find are those who tell half-truths rather than complete lies.”可知，最难辨认的是那些说话半真半假者。故选 C。

57. A 推理判断题。根据第三段最后两句“Research shows that up to 75 percent of resumes are inaccurate on purpose. The most common practice is omission.”可推知，大约 75% 的应聘者会在简历上有意隐瞒一些信息。选项 A 中的 leaving out 和原文中 omission 同义。故选 A。

58. B 推理判断题。第一段提到大部分人事经理都同意面试是最不客观的招聘方法，接着又说面试受太多人为因素的影响，故可推断出作者对面试的看法，即作者觉得面试太主观了。选项 A 意为“最客观的”，选项 C 意为“怀疑的”，选项 D 意为“轻信的”，均不符合题意。故选 B“太主观的”为正确答案。

Passage Three

59. C 事实细节题。根据第二段第五、六、七句可知，在一天的某些时间伦敦牛津街会有很多人步行，而在东京银座经常会有很多人步行，有时连走路都很困难。这正是 Tokyo 与 London 的不同之处。故选 C。

60. A 事实细节题。根据第二段倒数第二、三句“The worst time to be in the street is at 11：30 at night. That is when the nightclubs are closing and everybody wants to go home.”可知，晚上十一点半是在街上最糟糕的时间，因为那时夜总会要关门，所有人都要回家。故选 A。

61. D 事实细节题。根据第三段倒数第三句“They always leave and arrive on time.”可知，日本的火车总是准时出发和到达。故选 D。

62. A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的几个词语 five minutes, three fire-engines, every day 可以看出，火灾是频繁发生的。故选 A。

Section B

63—66 B A D C 67—70 B A C D

Ⅳ. Translation (20 points)

Section A

71. 越来越多的信用卡可以自动读取，使得持卡人可以在不同的地方存取款，不管当地支行是否营业。

72. 这些信息通过显示销售商品的种类和销售速度，使商家能够跟踪和记录它们的商品清单。

73. 大多数人事经理都认为，面试是最不客观的招聘方式之一。

74. 只有通过问合适的问题，你才能确认求职者是否是合适的人选；也只有通过问合适的问题，你才能给那些不诚实的应聘者施加压力。

75. 在伦敦的火车上，你会看到每个人都在看报。在东京的火车上，无论旅途长短，每位在座的乘客似乎都睡着了。

Section B

76. Sudie told me in a whisper that the young man with long red hair, who looked the part of an artist, was her cousin.

77. Aside from being fun and good exercise, swimming is a very useful skill.

78. John and his family got by upon a remarkably small income.

79. The steps to the top of the tower have been worn away by the feet of thousands of visitors.

80. It is strange that such an ignorant man should be regarded as a scholar.

Ⅴ. Writing (15 points)

What Can be Done to Tackle the Haze Problem?

China has been increasingly hit with severe hazy weather since the beginning of this century. In many big cities, where the pollutants in the air can't be dispersed without strong wind, the haze problem is worse. As a result, the incidence of respiratory disease among city dwellers has been on the rise.

The cause of the haze is no mystery. With rapid industrialization, many steel and power plants burn a lot of coal. Without resorting to the clean technology, these factories emit smoke and fume directly into the atmosphere. The past decade has also witnessed a sharp increase in the number of private cars. This would not have posed an environmental problem to the cities if the quality of gas is good and the car engines meet the emission standard. With fast-paced urbanization, the sand and dirt released from numerous construction sites also contribute to the haze problem.

In order to tackle this problem, we should reduce the use of private cars and choose public transport. The government should strictly enforce the environmental laws and severely punish polluters.

第二部分 语法、词汇精讲精练

第一章

语 法 结 构

第一节 时态

	一　般	进　行	完　成	完成进行
现在	work/works	am/is/are working	has/have worked	has/have been working
过去	worked	was/were working	had worked	had been working
将来	will/shall work	will/shall be working	will/shall have worked	will/shall have been working
过去将来	would/should work	would/should be working	would/should have worked	would/should have been working

1. 一般现在时通常与 every day/week, sometimes, usually, often, twice a week 等时间状语连用。

1.1　用来表示现在存在的特征和状态、习惯性动作、经常性动作等，或表示普遍真理或谚语。如：

Light travels more quickly than sound. 光速比声速快。

1.2　一般现在时可以代替一般将来时用于条件状语、时间状语、让步状语从句中。如：

I'll ring you as soon as he comes back. 他一回来我就给你打电话。

You will succeed if you try your best. 如果你尽力就会成功。

It will be 33 years before we have a chance of seeing the star again. 再过 33 年我们才有机会再次看到这颗星星。

I will accept any job as long as I don't have to get up early. 只要不必早起我就接受任何工作。

I'll stand by you even if you don't succeed. 即使你失败了我也会支持你。

1.3　具有"出发、到达"等含义的动词 come, go, arrive, get, leave, move, sail, start 等可以用一般现在时表示计划将要发生动作。如：

The meeting starts at five o'clock. 会议五点钟开始。

2. 一般过去时通常与 last year, just now, in those days 等时间状语连用，用来表示过去某时存在的状态或过去发生的动作，包括经常性或偶尔发生的动作。如：

When I was young, I was a handsome boy. 我年轻的时候是个很英俊的男生。

We used to go for a walk after supper. 我过去常常晚饭后去散步。

2.1 used to do（过去常常做）与 be used to doing（习惯于）的用法及区别：

He used to get up early. 过去他经常早起。(意味着如今他不再早起了)

Now he is used to getting up early. 现在他已经习惯早起了。

2.2 一些暂时性或一次性发生的动作通常用一般过去时。如：

He died and left his children a large sum of money. 他死后给他的孩子们留下了一大笔钱。

特殊句型：

It has been over a year since we last met. 自从我们上次见面已经一年多了。

You've changed much since you came here. 你自从你来这里改变了很多。

3. 一般将来时通常与 tomorrow, in 2 days, next week 等时间状语连用。

3.1 表示计划要做的事情或估计要发生的事情、最近打算做的事情，用 be going to do；表示正要做的事情用 be about to do，意为“即将……之时”，相当于 on the point of...，如：

The meeting is about to begin. 会议即将开始。

They are on the point of repairing the machine. 他们正准备修理这台机器。

3.2 表示计划、安排要做的事情，含有约定、必然、应该等不同意味用 be to do sth.，如：

They are to be married in May. 他们五月份结婚。

Am I to take over her work? 我接替她的工作?

The football game is to be televised live tonight. 今天晚上直播足球比赛。

4. 过去将来时表示从过去某时看将要发生的动作或情况，常用于宾语从句，如：

I told my father that I would conduct my own defense in court. 我告诉爸爸，我将在法庭上做自我辩护。

Whenever something went wrong with my typewriter, I would turn to him for help. 不管我的打字机什么时候坏了，我都会找他帮忙。

5. 现在进行时常与 now, at present, at this moment 等时间状语连用。表示此时此刻或现阶段一段时间内正在进行的动作，或重复的动作，或经常出现的动作。如：

Scientists are testing a new device for guiding a missile to its target. 科学家们正在测试一个用来指引导弹击中目标的新装置。

5.1 现在进行时与频率副词连用可以表示某种感情色彩。如：

He is always boasting. 他总是吹牛。

He is always finding fault with his employees. 他总是找雇员的毛病。

He is constantly thinking of how he could do more for others. 他常常想如何能为别人多做些事情。

5.2 具有“出发、到达”等含义的动词 come, go, arrive, get, leave, move, sail, start 等可以用现在进行时表示计划将要发生动作。如：

I'm leaving for Beijing. 我正要离开（离开地点不清楚）去北京。

6. 过去进行时表示过去某一时刻所发生的动作。如：

When he called me, I was reading. 他给我打电话的时候我正在阅读。

My heart was jumping with fear. 我的心吓得直跳。

It was snowing all night. 下了一夜雪。

注意：过去进行时侧重动作持续时间的长度，可表示持续的动作；而一般过去时着重说明动作的事实。

7. 将来进行时表示将来某时正在发生的或持续的动作。如：

He will be working on his doctoral dissertation during next May. 明年五月份，他将正忙着撰写他的

博士学位论文。

I'll be having an English class this time tomorrow. 明天这个时候我们正在上英语课。

8. 过去将来进行时表示就过去某一时间而言，将来某一时刻或某一段时间正在进行的动作。主要用于宾语从句中，尤其多用于间接引语中。

He asked me what I should be doing six o'clock tomorrow. 他问我明天六点将正在做什么。

He said he would be taking care of me. 他说他将来会照顾我。

He said that he could not come because he would be having a meeting. 他说他因为要开会所以不能来。

9. 完成时

9.1 现在完成时通常与 already，yet，these days，recently，lately，so far，by now，the past/the last 2 years，for，since 等时间状语连用，表示过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响，过去发生延续到现在的状态，或某一时期发生情况的总和。如：

He has been back for 3 days. 他回来 3 天了。

We haven't seen each other again since we graduated in 1987. 自从 1987 年毕业我们再也没见过。

How many products have you turned out? 你们制造了多少产品？

特殊句型：

It has been three years since they entered the college. 他们进入大学已经 3 年了。

This is the first/second time that I have visited the university. 这是我第一次/第二次参观这所大学。

It isn't the first time that I have found myself in an embarrassing situation. 这已经不是我第一次发现自己在一个尴尬的境地。

9.2 现在完成进行时表示从过去某一刻开始的动作一直延续到说话时还在进行或可能继续下去，常与表示一段时间的状语连用。如：

He's been working for Alibaba for 15 years. 他已经在阿里巴巴工作 15 年了。

I've been waiting for an hour but she still hasn't come. 我已经等了她一个小时了，但她还是没来。

The satellite has been sending back signals as well as photographs ever since it landed on the Venus. 自从这颗卫星登上金星以来就不断地发回信号和照片。

9.3 过去完成时通常与（by + 过去时间短语）never，by 2000，by the end of last term，by the time/when + 过去发生情况从句等时间状语连用，表示在过去某个时刻或时刻之前已经完成的动作或存在的状态，注意过去完成时不和 ago 连用，可与 before 连用，如：

He had finished the work by ten o'clock this morning. 到今天上午十点钟，他已经完成了这项工作。

She had visited America twenty times in the previous thirty years. 在过去的 30 年里，她去过 20 趟美国。

有些动词如 plan，think，intend，hope，want，mean 等常用过去完成时表示"打算做而没有做的事情"，如：

We had intended to finish writing this grammar book the day before yesterday. 我们本打算前天写完这本语法书。

We had planned to attend the meeting but we changed our mind. 我们本来计划参加会议，但是又改主意了。

9.4 过去完成进行时表示动作在过去某一时间开始一直持续到过去某一时间有可能继续下去。如：

When his father returned home, the little boy had been flying a kite for two hours. 当他父亲回家时，这个小男孩已经放了 2 个小时的风筝了（这个小男孩一直在放风筝）。

He told me that the lawyers had been arguing the case since eight o'clock in the morning. 他告诉我，律师们从上午八点开始就一直在争论这个案件。

9.5 将来完成时通常与（by + 将来时间）by the end of, by 2050 等时间状语连用，表示在将来某个时刻前或者某个动作发生前另一个动作将要结束或完成；有时候也表示一种推测。如：

By the time you arrive in London, we will have stayed in Europe for 2 weeks. 当你到达伦敦的时候，我将已经在欧洲待了 2 个星期了。

They will have stayed here for five months next week. 到下周，他们就在这里待了 5 个月了。

By the end of this term we shall have finished studying College English Book Ⅱ. 到这学期末，我们将完成大学英语第二册的学习。

9.6 将来完成进行时表示动作从某一时间开始一直持续到将来某一时间。如：

By next month he will have been working in our factory for 30 years. 到下个月，他在我们厂工作 30 年了。

If we don't hurry up, the store will have been closing before we get there. 咱们如果不快一点儿，等到了那儿，店门就会关了。

9.7 过去将来完成时表示从过去某个时间看将来某时之前已经完成的动作。如：

He said that they would have arrived by seven o'clock. 他说他们在七点钟前就会到达。

She told me that she would have finished typing the letter before I came back. 她告诉我，在我回来之前她就会把信件打好的。

I thought Judy would have graduated from the college by then. 我想届时朱迪就已经大学毕业了。

9.8 过去将来完成进行时表示动作从过去某一时间开始一直延续到过去将来某一时间。动作是否继续下去，由上下文决定。这个时态用得相对比较少，通常主要用于转述方面，即用于间接引语中。如：

I heard by July you'd have been teaching here for ten years. 我听说到七月份，你就在这里教了 10 年书了。

He said that by the end of the spring term he would have been studying English for three years. 他说到了春季学期末，他就学了三年英语了。

注意：时态常见错误就是动词即谓语时态形式与所给或所暗示的时间状语不一致。解决办法就是掌握与某个时态连用的时间状语。

请给下面的句子改错：

This is the longest flight I have ever taken. By the time we get to Los Angels, we had flown for 13 hours.

方法一：结合本句所给的时间状语，可以将主句中的 had flown 改为 will have flown。

方法二：主句的时态不变，将时间状语从句改为 By the time we got to Los Angels。

Grammar Test

1. Professor Smith told his students that he ________ letters all day tomorrow.

A. will write　　B. is writing　　C. would be writing　　D. will be writing

2. Anne says that she will come to see you and your husband the moment she ________ her work.

A. will finish　　B. finished　　C. finishes　　D. has finished

3. The monitor told me that I could not leave the room until I ________ all the windows.

A. closed　　B. had closed　　C. have closed　　D. would have closed

4. Mr. Smith ________ short stories, but he ________ a TV play these days.

A. is writing; is writing
B. is writing; writes
C. writes; is writing
D. writes; writes

5. It is reported that the company fulfilled their work earlier than they ________.

A. have expected
B. expected
C. were expecting
D. had expected

6. I don't know how long our general manager ________ away from home. He ________ on business trip since last Thursday.

A. will to be; was being
B. will have been; has been
C. would be; had been
D. will be; has been

7. This time yesterday Jack ________ his bike. He ________ TV.

A. repaired; didn't watch
B. was repairing; watched
C. repaired; watched
D. was repairing; wasn't watching

8. I often wonder whether our life ________ considerably by next year.

A. will be changing
B. will be changed
C. will have to change
D. will have changed

9. He ________ in a small workshop, but now he is the head of a big business company.

A. used to working
B. was used to work
C. used to work
D. was used to working

10. I ________ my breakfast when Mum told me that I was wanted on the telephone.

A. had
B. had been having
C. was having
D. have been having

11. My niece has been to Sumatra and Iran as well as all of Europe. By the time she is twenty, she ________ almost everywhere.

A. will be
B. would have been
C. will have been
D. would be

12. Is this the first time that you ________ Shanghai?

A. have visited
B. would visit
C. visited
D. have been visiting

13. While people may prefer to mobile phone for up-to-the-minute news, it is unlikely that television ________ the newspaper completely.

A. replaces
B. have replaced
C. is replaced
D. will replace

14. The conference ________ a full week by the time it ends.

A. has lasted
B. will have lasted
C. had lasted
D. is lasted

15. It's reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory ________ by 10%.

A. will have risen
B. has risen
C. will be rising
D. has been rising

16. The computer, working very fast, ________ data at the speed of light.

A. has handled
B. handled
C. handling
D. handles

17. The company ________ a rise in salary for ages, but nothing has happened yet.

A. is promised
B. is promising
C. has been promising
D. promised

18. He told the policeman that Kate ________ near the lake at this time yesterday evening.

A. was playing
B. is playing
C. has played
D. plays

19. As long as you ________ the money back promptly, I'll lend it to you with pleasure.

A. returned
B. return
C. will return
D. have returned

20. The foreigners say on Wechat that it will be 2 years before we ________ a chance of visiting our

country.

A. had B. have C. will have D. will be having

21. Unless economic conditions improve next year, there ________ widespread unrest (动荡的局面) in that country.

A. would be B. is C. should be D. will be

22. She told me she ________ in that university for 20 years by the end of this year.

A. will have taught B. will have been teaching

C. have been teaching D. would have been teaching

23. Even though they ________ side by side for nearly ten years, the two neighbors are still not very familiar with each other.

A. having been lived B. have been living

C. had been living D. having been living

24. Some doctors involved in brain research ________ that violence has its roots in certain sections of the brain.

A. are believing B. believe C. believing D. believes

25. Hundreds of jobs ________ if the factory closes.

A. will be lost B. lose C. are lost D. will lose

26. Linda didn't give up the attempt to cook the dinner although she ________ several times.

A. has failed B. failed C. had failed D. fails

27. Jordan is always ________ money from his classmates and forgetting to pay back, which makes them worrying.

A. borrowing B. borrowed C. been borrowed D. being borrowed

28. There is a police car in front of the gate of our campus. What do you suppose ________?

A. is happened B. did happen C. would happen D. has happened

29. The Queen ________ Japan in a week's time.

A. will be visit B. visit C. is to visit D. was to be visit

30. They ________ to join us in the game, but they couldn't get here in time.

A. have intended B. had intended C. intended D. were intended

31. Obviously, my 80-year-old grandmother ________ rural life.

A. shall finish B. used to C. is used to D. uses to

32. —Will she finish the work soon?

—Yes, she ________ it by next Friday.

A. shall finish B. finish C. have finished D. will have finished

33. It ________ almost every day so far this month.

A. is raining B. rained C. rains D. has been raining

34. It seems my wife ________ me severely for doing a wrong thing. What shall I do?

A. has forever criticized B. forever is criticizing

C. was forever criticizing D. is forever criticizing

35. When I was at college I ________ three foreign languages, but I ________ all except for a few words of each.

A. spoke; had forgotten B. spoke; have forgotten

C. had spoken; had forgotten D. had spoken; have forgotten

36. The style in woman's clothes this year calls for shorter skirts. Mother ________ busy taking up hers.

A. was　　B. has been　　C. had been　　D. has being

37. — Was the driving pleasant when you spent your holidays in Mexico last summer?

— No, it ________ for four days when we arrived, so the roads were very muddy.

A. was raining　　B. would be raining　　C. had been raining　　D. have rained

38. No wonder those plants are dying. They ________ any water for several months.

A. haven't had　　B. haven't　　C. hadn't had　　D. hadn't

39. For one week there ________ no break in the rain. How strange!

A. is　　B. will be　　C. has been　　D. have been

40. While formerly a member of the sports club, Mr. Teeters ________ tennis there regularly. Now he takes up mountain climbing.

A. is used to playing　　B. was used to play

C. used to play　　D. used to playing

Keys:

1—5　C C B C D	6—10　D D D C C	11—15　C A D B A	16—20　D C A B B
21—25　D D B B A	26—30　C A D C B	31—35　C D D D B	36—40　B C A C C

If at first you don't succeed, try, try again.
水滴石穿，绳锯木断。
You reap what you sow.
一分耕耘，一分收获。/种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。
Practice makes perfect.
熟能生巧。

第二节 被动语态

	一　般	进　行	完　成
现在	am/is/are done	am/is/are being done	has/have been done
过去	was/were done	was/were being done	had been done
将来	shall/will be done	** **	shall/will have been done
过去将来	should/would be done	** **	should/would have been done

1. 当动作的执行者不必说出、不易说出或无从说出的时候（不带 by）或者出于谦虚、礼貌、简练或微秒的感情等方面的考虑时常常使用被动语态。如：

The room has been cleaned. 房间被打扫干净了。

You have been told so many times not to touch these things. 告诉过你多少次了，不要碰这些东西。

2. 某些及物动词表示某种状态或情况，表示“拥有、容纳、缺少、明白”等意思，如：happen, take place, mean, rise, occur, break out, lack, fit, equal, resemble, befall, consist of, look like, hold, cost, contain, last, fail, benefit 等不能使用被动语态。如：

The story took place in 1989. 这个故事发生在 1989 年。

Jane resembles her mother. 简看起来像她的母亲。

The auditorium holds 5,000 people. 这个大厅能容纳 5000 人。

3. 某些动词以主动形式表示被动含义。具体情况如下：

3.1 某些感官动词和系动词 feel, look, smell, taste, sound, prove 等后面接形容词，如：

The flowers smell sweet. 这些花闻起来很香甜。

Cotton feels very soft. 棉花摸起来很柔软。

The surface feels rough. 表面摸上去很粗糙。

The music sounds very familiar to me. 这段音乐我听起来很耳熟。

3.2 be + 表被动意义的形容词（以-able, -ible 结尾）acceptable, reliable, visible, eatable, drinkable 等，如：

This bottle of milk has gone bad, so it is not drinkable. 这瓶牛奶坏了，所以不能喝。

Your plan is not practicable, so it is not acceptable. 你的计划是不可行的，所以不能接受。

I'm sorry, but those overcoats are not available in your color and size. 对不起，这些大衣没有您要的颜色和尺寸。

3.3 某些及物动词如：wash/clean, write, sell, read, open, cut, lock, play, shut, peel, record 等，通常是从及物动词转化而来的不及物动词，它们通常以主动形式表示被动含义。如：

The kind of cloth washes well. 这种布料很好洗。

The kind of glasses cleans easily. 这种眼镜很容易清洗。

Ripe oranges peel easily. 熟了的橙子容易剥皮。

The book sells well. 这本书卖得很好。

The recorder won't play. 这台录音机不转了。

The door won't shut. 门没有关上。

3.4 want, deserve, need, require 后面接 doing，如：

The point deserves mentioning. 这一点值得提及。

The coat requires mending. 这件衣服需要修补。

The house wants whitewashing. 房子需要粉刷。

The house needs painting, but they plan to wait until next spring to do it.

(= The house needs to be painted, but they plan to wait until next spring to do it.)

房子需要油漆，但是他们计划等到明年春天再做。

3.5 某些表语形容词后面用不定式主动式表示被动意义。如：

She is easy to approach. 她很容易接近。

He is hard to please. 他是难以取悦的。

The article is difficult to read. 这篇文章难以阅读。

4. 被动语态与系表结构的比较：

在英语中“be + 过去分词”结构，可能是被动语态，也可能是系表结构。这两种形式虽相似却又不同。其区别如下：

4.1 从时态上来区分。被动语态强调的是动作，其主语是动作的对象，可以有各种时态。而系表结构是说明主语的状态和特征的，作表语的过去分词相当于形容词，不强调动作，多用于一般现在时和一般过去时，表示目前和过去的性状，没有进行时。因此，凡是用进行时的可以肯定是被动语态。如：

This story was written by Lu Xun in 1922. 这篇小说是鲁迅在 1922 年写的。（表示动作，是被动

语态)

The problem is being studied. 问题正在(被)研究。(表示正在进行的动作，是被动语态)

This story is well written. 这篇小说写得很好。(表示性状，是系表结构)

4.2 从所带状语来区分。如果句子中带有时间状语、方式状语或用 by 词组作状语，多数是被动语态。如：

The shop is often closed at 6：30 in the afternoon. 那家商店通常在下午 6：30 关门。(带时间状语，是被动语态)

The shop is closed. 那家商店关门了。(表示性状，是系表结构)

She was surprised by this strange noise. 她对这种奇怪的声音感到惊讶。(被动语态)

She was not at all surprised at the news. 她对这个消息一点也不感到吃惊。(系表结构)

4.3 从动词的性质来区分。在英语中并非所有动词的过去分词都能用于系表结构作表语。常见的能作表语的动词一般大致有三类：

① 具有形容词特征的过去分词。如：能表示事物状态的 broken，closed，shut，lost 等；能表示人的感觉和情绪的 excited，interested，worried 等。如：

The windows was broken. 窗户被打破了。

He is interested in this book. 他对这本书感兴趣。

② 表示智力活动结果或表示行为结果的少数动词。如：known，unknown，learned，mistaken，killed，saved，deserted，injured，saved，wounded 等。

The young scientist is known to us all. 这位年轻科学家是我们大家都知道的。

The soldier was badly wounded. 那个士兵伤得很重。

③ 少数不及物动词的过去分词。不及物动词是没有被动语态的，若其过去分词用于系动词之后则一定是表语。能这样用的不及物动词多数是表示“运动”或“转变”的词，除了 rise，go 之外，还有 come，arrive，pass，fall，set，return，change，grow，become，turn，melt 等。如：

The moon is risen. 月亮升起来了。

Gone are the days when we were bullied! 我们被欺负的日子一去不返。

4.4 被动结构中的过去分词不可以用 very 等副词修饰，但系表结构可以。如：

Mother is very worried about his health. 妈妈很担心他的健康。

4.5 被动结构中的过去分词没有固定介词搭配，系表结构中的过去分词常常有固定介词搭配。如：

The girl was completely absorbed in the experiment. 那个女孩正全神贯注地做实验。

He was evidently not accustomed to this kind of food. 很显然，他不习惯吃这种食物。

5. 特殊动词用法：see，watch，observe，notice，hear，feel，let，have，make 等后面的不定式作宾语补足语的时候省略 to，构成 *v.* + sb. + do sth.，这类结构变被动的时候要还原 to。如：

Did you notice him leave the house? → Was he noticed to leave the house?

The teacher makes his students read the text. → His students are made to read the text.

含有情态动词的被动结构：(can，must，may，etc.) + be + done

Bad things sometimes can be turned into good ones. 坏事有时可以变成好事。

I was madeto wait two hours for an appointment in the chilly wind.

为了一个约会，我被迫在寒风中等了两个小时。

Grammar Test

1. I will have to push the car to the side of the road because we ________ if we leave it here.

A. would be fined　　B. will be fined　　C. will being fined　　D. will have been fined

2. If one ________ by pride, he will reject useful advice and friendly assistance.

A. overcomes B. overcome C. has been overcome D. is overcome

3. The United Kingdom ________ Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

A. consisted of B. is consisted of C. consists of D. consist

4. These ripe oranges ________ nice.

A. are tasted B. taste C. is tasted D. tastes

5. In some parts of the world, tea ________ with milk and sugar.

A. is serving B. served C. serves D. is served

6. The house suddenly collapsed while it ________ down.

A. was pulled B. pulled C. was being pulled D. had been pulled

7. —How do you like your new position?

—I ________.

A. don't satisfy B. am not satisfied C. can't satisfy D. haven't satisfied

8. She ________ in the feet on her way home from work.

A. was hurting B. is hurt C. hurts D. got hurt

9. It is a rule in our school that no books ________ out unless you have a library card.

A. must be taken B. can be taken C. might take D. should be taken

10. Though Newton was a great scientist, many of his ideas ________ today and been modified by the work of today's scientists.

A. are to challenge B. are challenging C. may be challenged D. have been challenged

11. Once environmental damage ________, it will take many years for the system to recover.

A. has done B. is to do C. is done D. is to be doing

12. Neither of the young men who had applied for the position in the university ________.

A. was accepted B. are accepted C. accepts D. have been accepted

13. In most manufacturing companies, workers ________ on a weekly basis.

A. are paid for B. get pay C. are paid D. get paid for

14. Whatever the causes, English at the beginning of the 21st century is more widely spoken and written than any other language ________.

A. ever was B. had ever been C. would ever be D. has ever been

15. As we know, all the regulations in school ________.

A. must keep up with B. must be kept C. must keep D. must be kept up

16. The English teacher tells him that his composition ________ any more.

A. need not to be corrected B. doesn't need to be corrected

C. doesn't need be corrected D. need not correct

17. The workers are made ________ all day by their boss.

A. work B. to work C worked D. working

18. Hurry up, or the tickets ________ out by the time we get there.

A. will have sold B. will sell C. have sold D. will have been sold

19. A candidate for the democratic presidential nomination ________ at this moment.

A. is interviewing B. being interviewed C. is being interviewed D. interviewing

20. He does not possess a bicycle. This one he uses ________ Peter.

A. is belonged to B. belonged to C. belongs to D. is belonging to

Keys：			
1—5　B D C B D	6—10　C B D B D	11—15　C A C D B	16—20　B B D C C

Don't put off until tomorrow what you can do today.
今日事，今日毕。
Where there is a will, there is a way.
有志者，事竟成。
Failure is the mother of success.
失败乃成功之母。

第三节　复合从句

英语中的主从复合句式是相对于简单句而言的，简单句只有一套主谓（宾）结构，而主从复合句则由主句和从句构成，主句有一套主谓结构，从句也有一套主谓结构；主句为句子的主体，从句不能独立，要对主句的某个成分进行限定、修饰、补充或说明。从句必须由引导词（连词）引出，否则复合句不成立。由于大部分连词既起连接主句和从句的作用，表明主从句之间的关系，又在从句中充当一定的成分，有一定的意义，故复合句中的连词常成为考查的焦点。

根据从句在句子中所起的作用，英语中的从句可以分为三大类：名词性从句、形容词性从句（定语从句）和副词性从句（状语从句）。

A. 名词性从句

名词性从句是在句子中起名词作用的句子。名词性从句的功能相当于名词词组，它在复合句中能担任主语、宾语、表语、同位语。因此根据它在句中不同的语法功能，名词性从句又可分别称为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

引导名词性从句的关联词可分为三类：

从属连词	that, whether, if
连接代词	which, who, whom, whose, what, whatever, whoever 等
连接副词	when, where, how, why

能够充当名词性从句的句子有三类：陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句。当用陈述句时，需要在陈述句句首用 that 来引导；用一般疑问句时，需要把疑问句倒装语序变为陈述语序，再用 whether 或 if（注意：if 只用于宾语从句）引导，以保留原句意思；用特殊疑问句时，则把特殊疑问句语序变为陈述语序。如：

The boy should be sent to school. 应当把这个男孩送去上学。
My idea is that the boy should be sent to school. 我认为应当把这个男孩送去上学。
Does he need my help? 他需要我的帮助吗?
I don't know whether/if he needs my help。我不知道他是否需要我的帮助。
Where could we get the loan? 我们从哪里能得到贷款?
There arouses the question where we could get the loan. 问题是，我们从哪里能获得贷款。

1. 主语从句

主语从句应保持陈述语序，当单个从句作主语时，主句谓语动词用单数。

1.1 从属连词 that，whether，if 只起连接作用，在从句中不起任何句法作用，但不能省略。并且由它们引导的主语从句，多用 it 作形式主语。如：

That men have learned much from the behavior of animals is hardly new. →It is hardly new that……animals. 人类从动物的行为中学到了很多，这并不是什么新鲜的东西。

It doesn't seem likely that she will be here. 她似乎不太可能在这里。

It occurred to him that he had forgotten to take his notebook with him. 他突然想到忘了带笔记本。

It happened that I knew his telephone number. 碰巧我知道他的电话号码。

It is said that he will go abroad next month. 据说下月他要出国。

Whether he will join us won't make too much difference. →

It won't make too much difference whether he will join us.

他是否参加我们的活动都没关系。

1.2 由连接代词 what，who，whoever，whom，whose，which 引导主语从句时，连接代词在从句中既充当句子成分，也有意义和连接作用。如：

What he wants to tell us is not clear. 他要跟我们说什么，还不清楚。

Who will win the match is still unknown. 谁能赢得这场比赛还不得而知。

Whoever leaves the room last should turn off the lights. 最后离开教室的人要关灯。

说明：whoever = anyone who，在句子中作双重主语，既作从句的主语又作主句的主语，而 who 只作从句主语。如：Who will come is not decided. 谁来还不确定。

注意：what 引导的名词性从句作主语时，其谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 what 指代的具体内容。如：

What we need is fresh water. （what 代指 fresh water）

What we need are useful books. （what 代指 useful books）

1.3 连接副词 when，where，how，why 引导主语从句时，连接副词既充当从句句子成分（状语），也有意义。如：

It is known to us how he became a writer. 我们都知道他是如何成为一名作家的。

Where the English evening will be held has not yet been announced. 英语晚会将在哪里举行，还没有宣布。

When he leaves is his own decision. 什么时候离开是他自己的决定。

注意：怎样判断是选连接代词还是连接副词？

解决要诀：如果从句中缺少主语、宾语、表语和定语，就选连接代词；如果从句缺乏状语，就选连接副词；如果从句不缺任何成分则只能选 that 或 whether。以上原则同样适用于表语从句、定语从句和同位语从句。

2. 宾语从句

宾语从句应保持陈述语序，注意 that 和 what 在引导宾语从句时，that 不作句子成分（可省略），而 what 作句子成分。

Everybody knows (that) money doesn't grow on trees. 众所周知，金钱是不会从树上长出来的。

He asked what he could do next. 他问他下一步能做什么。

2.1 由 whether，where，how，when，who 等引导的宾语从句可作动词宾语从句，也可作介词宾语从句。that 宾语从句不能直接放在介词后面。

In most of our country agriculture still depends on whether there is enough timely rain. 在我国的大部分地区，农业仍然依赖是否有足够的及时降水。

He didn't say anything about how he managed to pass the exam. 他没有说关于他如何通过考试的任

何事情。

She hasn't made up her mind as to/about whom she is to nominate as her candidate. 她还没有下定决心提名谁作为她的候选人。

注意：介词 besides，beyond，but，except，in 与 that 构成一个复合词，起连词作用，that 不可省略。其中，除了 in that 之外，besides/beyond/but/except/in that 都有“除了”的意思。如：

① besides that：此外；除外

She knew nothing besides that he was there. 除了知道他在那儿，她什么也不知道。

② beyond that：除去，除……之外

He did not really know what he was going to say beyond that the situation demanded something romantic. 除了说这场面需要浪漫色彩，他确实不知还该说些什么。

I have heard nothing beyond that he is ill. 除去他生病之外，我没有听见什么。

③ but that：要不是；如非，除……外

But that I saw it I could not have believed it. 要不是看见我真不能相信。

Nothing would please him but that we go along. 除了我们往下进行之外，什么都不会使他开心。

④ except that：除去……之外；可惜……

I know nothing except that he left home early that morning. 我只知道那天早晨他很早就离开了家，其余的我就不清楚了。

It's a very satisfactory hat, except that it doesn't fit me. 那是一顶很令人满意的帽子，只可惜我戴着不合适。

⑤ in that：因为；在……方面

Most of them are not in reality engineers, in that the work they do is mostly clerical. 他们中的大多数人实际上都不是工程师，因为他们做的主要是办公室工作。

2.2 当连接词是 that 时，由于句子平衡的需要，常常用 it 作形式宾语而将真正的宾语后置。如：

I took it for granted that they weren't coming. 我想当然地认为他们不会来。

I'll see to it that everything is ready on time. 我保证按时准备好一切。

He made it clear that he preferred to live here. 他明确地表示他宁愿住在这里。

2.3 if 可用于宾语从句中，有时可以和 whether 互换。如：

She asked if/whether she could help. 她问她是否能帮上忙。

3. 表语从句

表语从句应保持陈述语序，能引导主语从句的关联词都可以引导表语从句，应用原则与主语从句一致。如：

The problem is who will water my plants while I am away. 问题是我走后谁给我的植物浇水。

One advantage of solar energy is that it will never run out. 太阳能的一个优点是它永远不会耗尽。

4. 同位语从句

同位语从句多由 that 引导，that 只起连接作用，在从句中不作任何语法成分（定语从句的引导词在从句中可以充当一定的句子成分）；同位语从句与其所修饰的名词是相等关系，对前面的名词进行解释和说明，而定语从句与其所修饰的名词是修饰与被修饰的关系；同位语从句前面的名词是特定的。常常用作同位语从句的先行词有：belief，conclusion，fact，evidence，idea，opinion，plan，proposal，news，hope，question，suggestion，message，likelihood，doubt，proof，suspicion，worry，truth，possibility 等。如：

That is the fact that they left without saying goodbye. 这就是他们没有说再见就离开的事实。

There are signs that restaurants are becoming more popular with families. 有迹象表明餐馆受到越来越多的家庭欢迎。

He was allowed to go swimming on condition that he kept near the other boys. 他被允许去游泳的条件是和其他的男孩一起。

He went to the party in spite of the factthat he was not welcome. 尽管他不受欢迎，他还是去参加了聚会。

He got a message from Mr. Johnson that the manager could not see him that afternoon. 他从詹森先生那里得到消息，经理那天下午不会去看他。

B. 定语从句

1. 定语从句的3个重要概念

1.1 定义：用来修饰某个名词、代词或整个句子的从句就叫作定语从句。定语从句包括限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句两种。如：

The man you talked about is our headmaster. 你们刚才所谈论的那个人是我们的校长。

This is the bike my father gave me as my birthday present. 这是我父亲送给我作为生日礼物的自行车。

The tree whose leaves are red was planted last year. 那棵红叶子的树是去年栽的。

Our guide, who was a French Canadian, was an excellent cook. 我们的向导，一个法裔加拿大人，是一个优秀的厨师。

These apple trees, which I planted three years ago, have not become any fruit. 这些苹果树是我三年前种植的，还没有结果。

1.2 先行词：定语从句所修饰的词叫先行词，它一般是由名词、代词或句子充当。如：

The boy who is singing at the stage is only nine years old. 在舞台上唱歌的那个男孩今年才九岁。(先行词是名词)

Anyone that is willing to help others is welcome to our group. 任何愿意帮助他人的人都欢迎来参加我们的组织。(先行词是代词)

His mother is out of danger, which excites their family very much. 他母亲脱离了危险，这件事情使他们全家兴奋不已。(先行词是句子)

1.3 关系词：引导定语从句的词叫关系词。根据关系词的用法不同，关系词又分关系代词和关系副词，其中关系代词有 that, which, who, whom, whose 等，关系副词有 where, when, why 等。关系词既起连接先行词与定语从句的作用，又作从句中的某个句子成分。如：

We should do all that is useful to the people. 我们应该做一切有益于人民的事情。

The building which we are looking at used to be a hospital. 我们正在看的这幢大楼过去曾经是一家医院。

Those who were trapped under the ruins finally got rescued. 那些被困在废墟里的人最后得救了。

Our company has 2,000 workers, two thirds of whom are women. 我们公司有2 000名工人，三分之二是女工。

The room whose window faces south is mine. = The room of which the window faces south is mine. 窗户朝南的那间房间是我的。

It is the place where he once lived. 这是他曾经住过的地方。

I still remember the day when I first met Jennifer. 我仍然记得第一次见到詹妮弗的那一天。

I don't know the reason why he came so late. 我不知道他来得那么晚的原因。

2. 限制性定语从句

2.1 关系代词 that, which, who, whom, whose 在定语从句中作主语或宾语。关系代词在定语从句中作宾语时可以省略，但在介词后则不能省略。如：

The man who/that is speaking at the meeting is a famous writer. 正在大会上发言的人是一位著名的作家。

The woman (whom) you saw just now is our English teacher. 你刚刚看到的那个妇女是我们的英语老师。

That is the girl with whom he worked. 那是跟他一起工作的女孩。

Football is a game which is liked by most boys. 足球是大多数男孩子喜欢的运动。

This is the pen (which) he bought yesterday. 这是他昨天买的钢笔。

The documents for which they were searching have been recovered. 他们寻找的文件已找到了。

This is the woman scientist whose name is known all over the country. 这是一位（她的）名字被整个国家所熟知的女科学家。

2.2 关系副词 when, where, why 在从句中充当状语。当关系副词引导的定语从句紧紧跟在先行词后面的时候，关系副词也可以省略。如：

I never forget the day (when) I met you. 我永远不会忘记我遇见你的那一天。

The day will come soon when China will become a modern, powerful country. 中国将成为一个现代的、强大的国家的这一天很快就会到来。

She is going to live in Macao where she has some close friends. 她要到澳门定居，在那里她有几个密友。

This is the reason (why) I am late. 这是我迟到的原因。

3. 非限制性定语从句

3.1 在非限制性定语从句中，定语从句可修饰整个主句或主句的一部分，此时从句只能用 which 或 as 引导。如：

I tried to get out of the business, which I found impossible. 我试图从繁忙的事务中逃离出来，我发现这不可能。

Some of the roads were flooded, which made our journey more difficult. 有些道路被洪水淹没了，这使得我们的旅行更加困难。

As is known to us, Taiwan belongs to China. 众所周知，台湾属于中国。

He failed in this exam, which proves that he wasn't working hard enough. 他这次考试不及格，这证明他不够努力。

3.2 关系副词 when 引导非限制性定语从句相当于 at the time, just then, and then，有逗号与前面句子隔开。如：

The conference will be put off till next week, when all the comrades will arrive from different parts of the country. 会议将被推迟到下周，到那时所有与会人员将从祖国各地赶来。

Next month, when you'll spend your summer holidays in your hometown, is approaching. 下个月即将到来，届时你们将在家乡度暑假。

4. "介词+关系代词"结构

若关系代词在定语从句中作介词的逻辑宾语，可将介词提前构成"介词+关系代词 which/whom/whose"结构，关系代词指人时用 whom，不可用 who, that；关系代词指物时用 which，不可用 that；关系代词是所有格时用 whose，不可以用 that 或者 whom。介词取决于从句中的动词或形容词。如：

Do you like the book on which she spent \$10? 你喜欢她花了10美元的那本书吗？

Do you like the book for which she paid \$10? 你喜欢她花了10美元的那本书吗？

Do you like the book from which she learned a lot? 你喜欢她从中学到很多的那本书吗?

Do you like the book about which she often talks? 你喜欢她经常谈论的那本书吗?

This is the ring on which she spent 100 dollars. 这是她花100美元买的戒指。

He is the man on whom I think you can depend. 他是我认为你可以信赖的人。

He is the man for whose factory I work. 他是我给他的工厂打工的人(他是我老板)。

注意:含有介词的短语动词一般不拆开,介词不能提前。如:look for, look after, take careof 等。

This is the watch (which/that) I am looking for. (正)

This is the watch for which I am looking. (误)

5. of which 与 of whom 的用法

在定语从句中作表语的定语时,一般只用 of which 和 of whom。如:

There are many countries in Asia, of which China is the largest one. 亚洲有很多国家,中国是最大的一个。

He has three brothers, of whom Li Lei is the youngest one. 他有三兄弟,李蕾是他们中最小的一个。

of 前可使用名词、代词、数词和形容词最高级。

5.1 the 名词 + of + which/whom,表示所属关系,相当于 whose,译为"……的"。如:

She is my sister, the shirt of whom is blue. = She is my sister whose shirt is blue.

= She is my sister, of whom the shirt is blue. 她是我的妹妹,她的衬衫是蓝色的。

The house, the roof of which was damaged, has now been repaired. =

The house whose roof was damaged has now been repaired. 屋顶损坏的房子现在已经修好了。

5.2 代词 + of + which/whom

He has a lot of story-books, a few of which I have never read. 他有很多故事书,有几本故事书我还从未看过。

There are many people in the park, most of whom are old people. 公园里有很多人,大多数是老人。

5.3 数词 + of + which/whom

He has lots of books, five of which are English ones. 他有很多书,有5本是英文书。

The old man has three children, two of whom are college students and one of whom is a manager. 那个老人有三个孩子,其中两个是大学生,另一个是经理。

5.4 形容词最高级 + of + which/whom

New York is famous for its sky-scrapers, the highest of which has more than 100 stories. 纽约因为有很多摩天大厦而闻名,最高的摩天大厦有100多层。

He has three sons, the oldest of whom is a doctor. 他有三个儿子,老大是医生。

of 的用法:

1. of 表示同位关系:即用于在 A + of + B 结构,其中的 A 和 B 为同位关系。如:

Her sons, both of whom work abroad, ring her up every week. 她的两个儿子都在国外工作,他们每周都给她打电话。

We've tested three hundred types of boot, none of which is completely waterproof. 我们已经测试过300种靴子,没有一种是完全防水的。

2. of 表示整体与部分的关系:即用于"部分 + of + 整体(which, whom)"结构。如:

He went with a group of people, few of whom were correctly equipped for such a climb. 他和一队人一起去了,其中没有几个人配有进行这样一次登山的适当装备。

The buses, most of which were already full, were surrounded by an angry crowd. 公共汽车大多数都已经挤满了人,它们被愤怒的人群包围着。

3. of 表示所属关系：即 of 用于构成所有格。如：

He wrote a book the name of which I've forgotten. 他写了一本书，书名我忘了。

The house, the roof of which was damaged, has now been repaired. 那幢屋顶被损坏的房子现在已经修好了。

6. 引导定语从句的关系代词只用 that，不用 which 的常见情况有下列五种

6.1 当先行词是：something, anything, everything, nothing, all, none, few, little, some 等代词，或当先行词被 every, any, all, some, no, little, few, much 等代词修饰时。如：

Is there anything that I can do for you? 有什么我可以为你做的吗？

All that I gave was likely to consider as negligible. 我所给出的一切都可能被认为是微不足道的。

注意：that I gave 是定语从句修饰先行词 all，that 代指先行词，all 在定语从句中作宾语，这里没有省略 that。当先行词是 all，关系代词作主语或宾语时，只能用 that，不能用 which。All that I gave 意思是：我所给出的一切。另外，consider 与 as 之间省略了上下文中都知道的“it”（一件事情）。在这里，allthat 相当于 what。又如：

All that can be done must be done. 凡是能做的都必须做。

6.2 当先行词被形容词的最高级或序数词修饰时。如：

That is one of the most interesting books that are sold in the bookshop. 那是这家书店卖的最有趣的书之一。

The first thing that we should do is to get some food. 我们该做的第一件事是弄点吃的。

6.3 当先行词有 the only, the very, the same, the last 等修饰时。如：

My necklace is not the only thing that's missing. 我的项链不是唯一丢失的东西。

6.4 当先行词前有 who 或 which 等疑问代词时，用 that 以避免重复。如：

Who is the girl that is wearing a red coat? 穿着红色外套的女孩子是谁？

Which is the T-shirt that fits me most? 哪件 T 恤衫最适合我？

6.5 当先行词既有人又有物时，用 that。如：

The writer and his novel that you have just talked about are really well-known. 你刚才谈起的那位作家以及他的小说确实很有名。

7. 关系代词 as 与 which 的用法区别

7.1 as 和 which 都可引导非限制性定语从句，放在主句之后，代表前面整个句子，在非限制性定语从句中充当从句的主语、宾语。如：

His mother is ill, as/which makes him very sad. 他母亲病了，这件事情使他很难过。

Tom has found a good job, as/which we all hope. 汤姆找到了一件好工作，这正是我们大家所希望的。

7.2 as 引导非限制性定语从句，先行词可以是一个词，一个短语或者句子，可以位于句首或句尾，甚至还可以分割主句；而 which 引导非限制性定语从句只能放在主句之后。

As is known to all, China is a developing country. 众所周知，中国是一个发展中国家。

He is from the south, as we can know from his accent. 他是南方人，我们从他的口音就能知道。

Water consists of hydrogen and oxygen, which (as) is known to all. 众所周知，水由氢和氧组成。

另外，as 的常见结构如下：

as is said before...	as can be imagined...	as often happens...
as has been mentioned above...	as has been announced...	as is often the case...
as has been pointed out...	as might/could be expected...	as can be seen from these figures...

“as”常常有“正如，正像”的含义，如：

As is generally accepted, the social status of women has been greatly improved nowadays. 普遍接受的观点是，妇女的社会地位如今有了很大的提高。

As you expected, he turned up on time. 正如你所愿，他按时到了。

As is said above, he has conquered the difficulty. 正如上面所说，他克服了困难。

7.3 当先行词由 such, the same 修饰时，关系词常用 as，构成 such... as...，the same... as... 结构，如：

She wears the same kind of dress as I do. 她穿的衣服和我的一样。

Such people as you described are rare nowadays. 你描述的这种人现在很少见。

Here is such a difficult problem as none of us can solve. 这是一个我们都无法解决的难题。

8. 定语从句与同位语从句的区别

8.1 定语从句中，从句和先行词是修饰关系；同位语从句中，从句是对先行词的具体说明，从句和先行词是等价关系，它们的地位是同等的。试比较：

The plane that has just taken off is for Paris. 刚刚起飞的飞机是去巴黎的。(定语从句)

The fact that he has already died is quite clear. 他已经死了这一事实很清楚。(同位语从句)

8.2 定语从句中关系代词在从句中充当句子成分；同位语从句一般由连词 that 引导，在从句中一般不充当成分。试比较：

The opinion (which/that) I heard from Tom is totally wrong. 我从汤姆那里听到的意见完全错了。(定语从句)

其中 opinion 是从句中 hear 的宾语，即 I hear the opinion from Tom，opinion 在从句中由 that 或 which 代替，作宾语时可以省略关系代词。

I heard the news that our team had won. 我听到了我们队获胜的消息。(同位语从句)

其中 news 与 our team had won 的地位相同，从句是对限定词 the news 的进一步解释。

9. 关系副词 when, where, why 的用法

9.1 when 指时间，在从句中作时间状语，它的先行词通常有：time, day, morning, night, week, year 等。如：

I still remember the time when I first became a college student. 我仍然记得我刚刚成为大学生的时候。

Do you know the date when Lincoln was born? 你知道林肯的出生日期吗？

The days are gone forever when the Chinese people were looked down upon. 中国人民被人轻视的日子一去不复返了。

The main school holidays are from mid-December till early February, when the days are long and warm. 学校的主要假期是从 12 月中旬到 2 月初，这段时间里白天长而且很暖和。

Considering (the time) when these paintings were done, they are in excellent condition. 考虑到这些油画的创作时期，它们保存的状况是极好的。

Do you remember (the time) when the three of us went on a picnic? 你还记得我们三个人去野餐的那段时光吗？

① 在定语从句中，that 在某些条件下可用来代替 when，这时其先行词通常是 time, day, moment, year 等。如：

His mother died on the evening that he was born. 他母亲死于他出生的那天晚上。

I stay at home on the days that I am not busy. 在我不忙的时候，我就待在家里。

② when 时常可以省略，特别是在某些句型和某些时间状语中。如：

Each time he came, he did his best to help us. 每次他来，他都尽力帮助我们。

But help never stopped coming from the day she fell ill. 自从她生病的那天帮助从未停止。

9.2 where 指地点，在从句中作地点状语。它的先行词通常有：place, spot, street, house, room, city, town, country 等。如：

This is the hotel where they are staying. 这是他们住的酒店。

I forget the house where the Smiths lived. 我忘记了史密斯的家在哪儿。

注：where 有时也可以省略。如：

This is the place (where) we met yesterday. 这是我们昨天见面的地方。

9.3 why 指原因或理由，它的先行词只有 reason。如：

That is the reason why he is leaving so soon. 这是他很快就要离开的原因。

注：why 时常也可以省略。如：

That is the real reason he did it. 那就是他做这件事的真正原因。

9.4 when, where, why 这三个关系副词在意义上都相当于一定的“介词 + which”结构：

when = on (in, at, during...) + which;

where = in (at, on...) + which;

why = for which. 如：

I was in Beijing on the day when (= on which) he arrived. 他到的那天我在北京。

I'll never forget the mountain village where (= in which) I spent my childhood. 我永远不会忘记我度过童年时代的那个山村。

I don't know the reason why (= for which) he did that. 我不知道他为什么那样做。

10. 当先行词表示时间、地点、原因、方式时，如何选择关系词

一定要注意分析从句的结构：当缺少主语或宾语时，关系词应该用 which 或 that；当缺少时间状语、地点状语或原因状语时，才能用 when, where 或 why。试比较：

10.1 当先行词是表时间的 time, day 等和表地点的 place, house 及表示原因的 reason 等时：

I'll never forget the day when my hometown was liberated. 我永远不会忘记家乡解放的那一天。

I'll never forget the days which/that we spent with my grandma last summer. 我永远不会忘记去年夏天和祖母一起度过的日子。

His father works in a factory where radio parts are made. 他父亲在一家制造无线电元件的工厂工作。

His father works in a factory which/that makes radio parts. 他父亲在一家制造无线电元件的工厂工作。

The reason that/which/(也可以省去) he gave you was reasonable. 他给你的理由是合理的。

The reason why he could not go there was that his grades were too low. 他不能去那儿的原因是他的成绩太低了。

10.2 ① The reason why... is that... 是特定句型，why 引导定语从句，在句中是关系副词，is 后的用词是 that，不用 because。如：

The reason why she did it is that she wouldn't let her parents feel disappointed. 她那么做的原因是她不想让父母失望。

② The reason is/was that... 当主语是 reason/cause 时，不能用 because 或 why 引导表语从句，以免造成语义重复。也可以理解为 is/was 后跟名词性从句作表语，用连词 that。

The reason why/for which/(也可以省去) he was late was that he got up late. 他迟到的原因是他起床晚了。

③ 当主语是 This/That 时，可以由 because/why 引导表语从句。

He got up late. That was why he was late for class. 他起晚了。那就是他上课迟到的原因。

He was late for class, because he got up late. 他上课迟到了，因为他起晚了。

10.3 the way 作先行词的用法：在定语从句中作主语、宾语、状语。

① He has given you the way (that) is best to solve the problem. 他给你的是最好的解决问题的方式。(way 在定语从句中充当主语，引导词可以省略)

② I want to know the way (that) he told you yesterday. 我想知道他昨天告诉你的方法。(way 在定语从句中充当 told 的宾语，引导词可以省略)

③ I don't like the way (in which) he speaks to me. 我不喜欢他对我说话的方式。

(way 在定语从句中充当介词宾语，介词短语在定语从句中充当状语，引导词可以省略)

C. 状语从句

状语从句在句中作状语，修饰主句中的动词、形容词或副词等。状语从句放在主句之前时，常用逗号分开；放在主句之后一般不用逗号。状语从句按其意义和作用可分为时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、让步、条件、方式、比较 9 种从句。

1. 时间状语从句常用下列引导词：when, while, as, as soon as, immediately, directly, the moment (that), the minute (that), no sooner... than..., hardly/scarcely... when..., once (一旦……就……), till, until 和 not... until, every time, each time, next time, the first time, any time, all the time 等。

1.1 when, while 和 as 的用法及区别：

① when 既可引导一个持续的动作，也可引导一个短暂的动作，如：

When I lived there, I used to go to the seashore on Sundays. 我住在那里时，星期天常到海滨去。

When the film ended, the people went back. 电影一结束，看电影的人便回去了。

② while 引导的动作必须是持续性的，侧重主句动作和从句动作相对比。如：

Please don't talk so loud while others are working. 别人在工作时，别高声说话。

While I was wondering at this, our schoolmaster took his place. 正当我对此不解时，我们校长就座了。

③ as 引导一个持续性动作，多用于主句和从句动作同时发生。如：

He hurried home, looking behind as he went. 他匆匆忙忙跑回去，一边走一边回头望。

John sings as he works. 约翰一边工作，一边唱歌。

1.2 as soon as, immediately, directly, the moment (that), the minute (that), no sooner... than..., hardly/scarcely... when..., once (一旦……就……) 的用法：

这些从属连词常译为"一……就……"，如：

Once you remember it, you'll never forget it. 一旦你记住它，你将永远不会忘记它。

The moment I heard the voice, I knew father was coming. 我一听到那声音，就知道父亲要来了。

No sooner had we arrived at the station than the train left. 我们一到车站，火车就开了。

The boy burst into tears immediately he saw his mother. 男孩一看见母亲就大哭起来。

注意："no sooner... than...; hardly/scarcely... when..."结构的时态搭配。

no sooner 与 hardly/scarcely 引导的主句谓语动词用过去完成时，而 than 与 when 的从句谓语用一般过去时。此外，当把 no sooner 和 hardly/scarcely 提到句首时，主句要用倒装语序。

I had no sooner reached home than it began to rain. →

No sooner had I reached home than it began to rain. →

I had hardly got home when it began to rain. 我刚到家，天就下雨了。

He had scarcely finished his speech when the audience started cheering. →

Scarcely had he finished his speech when the audience started cheering. 他刚演讲完，观众就开始欢呼起来。

1.3 till，until 和 not...until 的用法及区别：

① 肯定句：主句谓语动词必须是延续性动词，主句、从句都为肯定式，意为“某动作一直持续到某个时间点才停止”。如：

He remained there until she arrived. 他一直等到她来。

You may stay here until the rain stops. 你在这里可以待到雨停。

② 否定句：主句谓语动词必须是非延续性动词，从句肯定式，意为“某动作直到某时间才开始”。如：

He won't go to bed till (until) she returns. 直到她回来他才去睡觉。

③ till 不可以置于句首，而 until 可以。如：

Until you told me I had no idea of it. 直到你告诉我，我才知道这件事。

④ not...until 句型中的强调和倒装用法：

not...until 用在强调句结构：It is/was not until...that... 中不用倒装语序。如：

It was not until he had done his work that Mike came. 麦克直到完成工作才回来。

not until 置于句首主句要倒装，如：

Not until you told me did I have any idea of it. 直到你告诉我，我才知道这件事。

1.4 before 和 since 的用法：

① 当表达“还未……就……，不到……就……，……才……，趁……还没来得及”时，需用连词 before。如：

We had sailed four days and four nights before we saw land. 我们航行了四天四夜才看到陆地。

We hadn't run a mile before he felt tired. 我们跑了还不到一英里他就累了。

Please write it down before you forget it. 趁你现在没忘把它记下来。

Before I could get in a word, he had measured me. 我还没来得及插话他就给我量好了尺寸。

before 从句中谓语不用否定式，又如：

Before they reached the station, the train had gone. 他们（还没）到火车站前，火车就已经开走了。

② 句型 It be (not) + 时间段 before + 从句，意思为：“多久之后才……”，如：

It will be half a year before I come back. 半年之后我就回来。

It won't be long before we meet again. 不久我们会再相见。

It was long/one year before she came. 她过了很久/一年才回来。

It was not long before I forgot it all. 没过多久，我就把它全忘了。

③ since 从句的动词一般是非延续性动词，主句的谓语动词是延续性的或者是反复发生过的动作。since 从句的时态为一般过去时。相应地，主句中的时态是现在完成时或现在完成进行时。如：

I have written home four times since I came here. 自从我到这儿来，我给家里写了四封信。

She has been working in this factory since she left school. 她自从离开学校就一直在这家工厂工作。

④ 句型 It is + 时间段 + since + 从句，时间的计算一律从 since 句的动作完成或状态结束时算起。如：

It is three years since the war broke out. 战争爆发三年了。

It is three years since she was in our class. 她离开我们班有三年了。

It is three years since he lived here. 他不在这儿住有三年了。

It is three years since I (have) smoked a cigar. (= since I stopped smoking a cigar). 我不吸烟有三年了。

如果翻译“我吸烟有三年了”，应为：It is three years since I began to smoke.

1.5 every time, each time, next time, the first time, any time, all the time 等名词短语

引导时间状语从句，表示“每当……，每次……，下次……”。如：

Every/Each time I was in trouble, he would come to help me out. 每次我遇到麻烦，他都来帮我。

Next time you come, do remember to bring your son here. 下次你来的时候，一定要带你儿子到这儿来。

The last time she saw James, he was lying in bed. 她最后一次见到杰姆斯时，他躺在床上。

The first time I climbed onto the wall, I felt nervous. 我第一次爬到墙上时，感到紧张。

You are welcome to come back any time you want to. 随时欢迎你回来。

2. 地点状语从句常用下列引导词：where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere。如：

Where there is a will there is a way. 有志者，事竟成。

Wherever there is smoke, there is a fire. (无火不生烟) 无风不起浪。

I looked for my wallet everywhere, but I can't find it anywhere. 我到处找我的钱包，但是我怎么也没找到。

3. 原因状语从句常用下列引导词：because, since, for, as, now that, in that, considering (that), seeing (that) 等，其中，now that (既然，由于) 引导的原因状语从句常常置于主句之前，而 in that (原因在于，是因为) 引导的原因状语从句则常常置于主句之后，如：

Now that quite a few committee members were absent, we decided to call off the meeting. 由于几个委员缺席，我们决定取消会议。

We could have a joint party, seeing that your birthday is the same day as mine. 我们可以联合举行一个聚会，因为你的生日和我的生日是同一天。

Considering that the weather is bad, we'll stay at home. 考虑到天气不好，我们还是待在家里吧。

Seeing that he is ill, we'll do the work for him. 因为他病了，我们将为他做这项工作。

3.1 because, since, as, for 的比较。这四个词都是并列连词。

because 意思是“因为”，回答 why 时只能用它，表示的是直接的理由，语气较强；

since 意思是“既然”，表示对方已知道的事实或理由；as 意思是“由于”，表示较为明显的理由，语气较弱，比较口语化；

for 意思是“因为”一般只表推断的理由，只是对主句的附带说明，用逗号与主句隔开，重点在主句。如：

Mary didn't go to school yesterday, because she was ill. 玛丽昨天没有上学，因为她病了。

Since he says so, it must be true. 既然他这么说，那一定是真的。

As you are tired, you had better have a rest. 既然你累了，最好休息一下。

It must have rained in the night, for I saw the grass wet. 夜里一定下雨了，因为我看到草地很湿。

3.2 now that, in that 的比较：

now that 意思是“既然，由于”，引导的原因状语从句常常置于主句之前。

in that 意思是“原因在于，是因为”，引导的原因状语从句常常置于主句之后。如：

Now that you've finished the work, you ought to have a good rest. 既然已经完成了工作，你就应该好好休息一下。

This book is different from that book in that this one is about chemistry and that one about history. 这本书不同于那本，因为这本是有关化学的，而那本是有关历史的。

3.3 其他表示原因的方式

除了状语从句以外，一些介词短语同样可以表示原因，这些常用短语有：because of，thanks to，due to，owing to 等。

4. 条件状语从句分为真实条件从句和非真实/虚拟条件从句。

常用引导词有：if，unless = if... not（除非，要不是），on condition that = if（条件是，如果……；在……条件下，若……则），so/as long as（只要），provided that，providingthat（以……为条件，假如），suppose/supposing（that）（猜想，以为，假定），assuming that（假设），given（that）（在……情况下），but that（要不是）等。

4.1 if，unless = if... not（除非，要不是），on condition that = if（条件是，如果……；在……条件下，若……则）

If I were you，I would invite him to the party. 如果我是你，我会邀请他参加聚会。

I would have arrived much earlier if I had not been caught in the traffic. 如果没有堵车，我会到得早得多。

You will fail to arrive there in time unless you start earlier. 如果你不早点动身，你就不能及时赶到那儿。

Unless he studies hard he will never pass the examination. →

If he doesn't study hard，he will never pass the examination. 除非/要不是他努力学习，他将不能通过考试。

I will lend you the book on condition that you return it on Monday. 如果你能在星期一还我，我可以借给你这本书。

4.2 as long as 和 so long as 的用法和区别：

① as long as 和 so long as 均可表示“只要”，用于引导条件状语从句，两者没什么区别。如：

I don't care so/as long as she lets me be with her son. 只要她让我和她儿子在一起，我不在乎。

You can take my car as/so long as you drive carefully. 你可以用我的汽车，只要你小心点儿开。

② 当 as long as 用于本义表示“与……一样长”时，与 so long as 在用法上是有区别的，即 as long as 可用于肯定句或否定句，而 so long as 只用于否定句，不用于肯定句。如：

It took three times as long as I had expected. 这件事比我预料的多花了两倍的时间。

It didn't take as/so long as I expected. 花的时间比我预料的短。

4.3 provided that 和 providing that 的用法和区别：

provided that 意思是：假设，万一，倘若。被修饰的部分和句子主语为被动关系。

providing that 意思是：假设，万一，倘若。被修饰的部分和句子主语为主动关系。

Providing that you exercise due care，there is no reason why you shouldn't live to a great age.
只要你适当地注意锻炼，你就可以有很长的寿命。

I will go providing that my expenses are paid. 要是我的费用有人代付我就去。

I will lend the money to you provided that you return it next month. 如果你下个月还我，我就把钱借给你。

You may go out providing you do your homework first. 只要你先做家庭作业，你就可以出去。

4.4 suppose/supposing（that）（猜想，以为，假定），assuming that（假设）。如：

Suppose/Supposing（that）we miss the train，what shall we do? 如果我们误了火车，我们该怎么办?

Suppose/Supposing (that) I don't have a day off, what shall we do? 假如我没有休息日，我们该怎么办？

Assuming that the proposal is accepted, when are we going to get the money?

假设这个建议被接受了，我们什么时候能拿到钱？

4.5 given/given that 的意思是一样的，都是指“在……的情况下”，但是使用情境不同。

① given 用作介词，表示原因，意思为“考虑到”；表示假设，意思为“假设，假如”如：Given more time, they'll probably agree. 如果给他们更多的时间，他们也许会同意。

Given his age, he has done a good job. 考虑到他的年龄，他已经做得不错了。

② given that 可以引导从句。如：

Given that he is ill, he has done a good job. 考虑到他得病了，他已经做得不错了。

Given that they are inexperienced, they've done a good job. 考虑到他们缺乏经验，他们已经干得很好了。

4.6 but that（要不是），常用于虚拟语气，that 从句用“(should) + 动词原形”结构。如：

He would have died but that they sent him to hospital in time. 要不是他们及时把他送到医院，他就死了。

注意：主句是一般将来时，从句可用一般现在时表示将来的事情。

5. 目的状语从句常用下列引导词：in order that, so that, lest, for fear that, in case 等。

5.1 in order that 与 so that 两个连词的意思都是“以便……，为了……”，引导的状语从句中用情态动词，in order that 比 so that 正式。

In order that everybody should hear him, he spoke loudly. 为了让每个人都听见他说话，他说话声音很大。

We talk quietly in order that we should not disturb the other passenger. 我们安静地交谈，以免打扰其他乘客。

He spoke slowly so that he could be heard clearly. = He spoke slowly so as to be heard clearly. 他讲得很慢，以便能听得清。(被别人听清楚)

So that everyone could see, the taller children stood at the back. 为了让大家都看得见，个子高的孩子站在了后面。

注意：so that 引导的目的状语从句可移至主句前，也可引导结果状语从句，通常置于主句之后。如：

I always write carefully so that I may make my meaning clear. 我总是写得很仔细，以便把我的意思表达清楚。

5.2 lest, for fear that 与 in case 引导的目的状语从句中谓语动词要用 (should) + 动词原形，它们本身带有否定意义，相当于 in order that... not 或 so that... not，如：

The boy hid himself behind the tree in case/for fear that his father should see him. 那个男孩躲在树后以防/唯恐他父亲看见他。

Take your raincoat in case/lest it should rain. 带上你的雨衣以防下雨。

6. 结果状语从句常用下列引导词：so... that..., such... that....

6.1 引导结果状语从句的从属连词有：so... that..., such... that...，在非正式文体中，that 可省略。主要的结构形式有：

so + 形容词/副词 + that 从句

so + 形容词 + a/an + 可数名词单数形式 + that 从句

so + many/much/few/little + 名词 + that 从句

such + a（n）+ 形容词 + 单数可数名词 + that 从句

such + 形容词 + 复数可数名词 + that 从句

such + 形容词 + 不可数名词 + that 从句

He was so angry that he couldn't say a word. 他气得说不出话来。

She made so good a meal that we all ate far too much. 她做的饭菜那么好吃，结果我们都吃得太多了。

It was so good an exhibition that I went to see it several times. 展览是那么好，结果我就去看了好几次。

He is such a clever boy that everybody likes him. 他非常聪明，大家都非常喜欢他。

He was such an honest man that he was praised by the teacher. 他非常诚实，因而受到了老师的表扬。

They are such interesting novels that I want to read them once again. 这些小说非常有趣，我想再读一遍。

He has made such great progress that the teachers are pleased with him. 他进步得很快，老师们对他很满意。

注意：

① 如果 such 后边的名词前由 many、much、few、little 等词所修饰的话，则不用 such 而用 so。如：

He had so many falls that he was black and blue all over. 他摔了很多跤，以致全身上下青一块，紫一块的。

He had so little education that he was unfit for this job. 他所受教育很少，不适合做这个工作。

② 其中 such that 可以用于预指后文，如：

His behavior is such that everybody dislikes. 大家都不喜欢他的行为。

The damage was such that it would cost too much money to repair. 损坏得很严重，要用很多钱才能修好。

so... that..., such... that... 的区别主要有三个： ① so + 形容词 + a（n）+ 名词 + that/such + a（n）+ 形容词 + 名词 + that； ② 当形容词后跟名词复数或不可数名词时，只能用 such； ③ 当名词前有 many，few，much，little 修饰时，只能用 so。

6.2 当 so，such 位于句首时主句要倒装。如：

So cold was the weather that we had to stay at home. 天气太冷，我们只好待在家里。

So loudly did he speak that even people in the next room could hear him. 他讲话声音那么大，隔壁屋里的人都听得见。

Such a nice man did he seem that we all believe him. 他像个很和蔼的人，所以我们都信任他。

6.3 so 与 such 的区别：

so 与 such 都可以用来表示程度，意思是“如此，这样”，但用法却各不相同。

such 是形容词，用来修饰名词，名词前有无形容词都可以；so 是副词，用来修饰形容词或副词，形容词后可以省略名词。如：

He is such a（big）fool. 他真是个大傻瓜。

He is so foolish（a man）. 他真是个大傻瓜。

6.4 单数名词前有不定冠词和形容词时，so 与 such 位置不同。

前者为：so + 形容词 + 冠词 + 名词，

后者为：such + 冠词 + 形容词 + 名词；如：

I know such a clever boy. 我认识一个非常聪明的男孩。

I know so clever a boy. 我认识一个非常聪明的男孩。

6.5 so 后即使有形容词，也不能修饰复数名词或不可数名词，而 such 则可以。如：

They are such useful books. 这些书非常有用。

He gave us such good food. 他给了我们很多美食。

7. 让步状语从句常用下列引导词：though，although，even though，while，as，no matter what (where，how，when 等)，whatever，wherever，whenever。如：

Though he is young，he knows a lot. = Young as he is，he knows a lot. 尽管他很年轻，他知道的很多。

Although my uncle is old，he looks very strong and healthy. 我的叔叔虽然老了，但他看上去还是很健壮。

Even if/Even though it is raining，we'll go. 即使天下雨，我们也要去。

Wherever you go，I will be right here waiting for you. 不管你去哪里，我依然会在这里等你。

No matter who does it，I will not agree. = Whoever does it I will not agree. 无论是谁做，我都不会同意。

While Barbara has many friends，she often feels lonely. 虽然巴拉拉有很多朋友，她却经常感到孤独。

其中 though，as 状语从句常常倒装。其基本句型为：

名词 + as/though + 主语 + 系动词"，如果表语是单数可数名词，提前时该名词省去冠词；"形容词/副词 + as/though + 主语 + 系动词"；"动词原形 + though + 主语 + 情态动词/助动词"。如：

Child as he was，he could speak English. 尽管他是个孩子，他能说英语。

Happy as they were，there was something missing. 尽管他们很快乐，但总缺少点什么。

Hard as I tried，I still couldn't persuade him. 虽然我很努力，但还是说服不了他。

Try as he would，he could not lift the rock. 尽管试过多次，他仍不能搬动那块石头。

7.1 这类倒装的让步状语从句可用 as，though 来引导，但不能用 although 来引导；但是，不倒装的让步状语从句则可用 though，although 来引导，而不能用 as 来引导。也就是 although 引导让步状语从句时不能倒装，as 引导让步状语从句时必须倒装，而 though 引导让步状语从句时可以倒装也可以不倒装。如：虽然很晚了，但我们还是继续工作。

正：Late as (though) it was，we still went on working.

正：Though (Although) it was late，we still went on working.

误：Late although it was，we still went on working.

误：As it was late，we still went on working.

7.2 上面提到的倒装结构有时也可用来表示原因，区分的方法主要看句子的内容：让步从句的内容大多数与主句在意义上相反，而原因从句则与主句之间有因果关系。

试比较：

Tired as he was，he sat up late studying at night. 他虽然很疲倦，但还是学习到很晚才睡。(表让步)

Tired as he was，he went to bed early. 因为很累，所以他睡得很早。(表原因)

Young as he was，he was equal to the task. 他虽然年轻，却能胜任这项工作。(表让步)

Young as he was，he was not equal to the task. 因为年轻，所以他不能胜任这项工作。(表原因)

8. 方式状语从句常用下列引导词：as，just as，the way，as if/though。如：

I have to do as my boss told me. 我必须按老板告诉我的那么做。

Leave it as it is. 保持原状，不要动它。

As a man lives, so he dies. 正如人能活，也能死。

She went to the beach with me just as she had promised me to do. 她正如她许诺我的那样和我去了海边。

She played the piano the way/as the old pianist had taught her. 她用老钢琴家教她的方法（方式）弹钢琴。

The little girl looks as if she's going to cry. 这个小女孩看起来像要哭了。

8.1　as 引导的方式状语从句中，当从句和主句的谓语一致时，从句的谓语可用 do 或 be 代替，以免重复，有时要倒装。如：

She's unusually tall, as are both her parents. 她长得特别高，她的双亲也是如此。

8.2　口语中 like 也可用连词引导方式状语从句。如：

Do it like he does. 照他那样做。

She can't cook like her mother does. 她菜做得没有她妈那样好。

9. 比较状语从句常用下列引导词：as... as..., not so/as... as..., than, the more... the more...（越……越……），如：

He doesn't work as hard as she (does). 他工作不像她那样努力。

The work is not so difficult as you imagine. 这项工作不像你想象的那么难。

You look younger than you are. 你看上去比你的实际年龄要年轻。

The more you study, the more knowledge you can get. 你学的越多，你的知识越丰富。

as 的主要用法：

英语中 as 一词，词性繁多，用法复杂，搭配力强，是英语考试中的常见考词。其用法总结如下：

1. 用在 as... as 结构中，第二个 as 是连词，它往往连接一个不完整的从句，表示比较，意为"和……一样，像……一样"。如：

He recites as much of the poem as he could remember. 他把诗中记得住的都背诵出来了。

She's as good an actress as she is a singer 她当演员和当歌手一样出色。

2. 引导时间状语从句，意为"当……的时候，一边……一边……，随着"。如：

She sang as she worked. 她一边工作一边唱歌。

You will grow wiser as you grow older. 随着年龄的增长，你会变得越来越聪明。

3. 引导原因状语从句，意为"因为，既然"常位于句首，如：

As you are tired, you had better rest. （既然）你累了，最好休息一下。

4. 引导方式状语从句，意为"像……，正如，按照"。如：

Do it as I told you. 按我说的做。

Run as I do. 像我这样跑步。

Leave it as it is. 保持原状，不要动它。

5. 引导让步状语从句时 as 位于形容词或副词之后表示让步倒装，意为"虽然"。如：

Rich as he is, he is not happy. 他虽然富有，但却不开心。

Much as I like you, I couldn't live on you. 尽管我很喜欢你，但我不能靠你生活。

6. 引导比较状语从句，一般用于 as... as 或 so... as 结构中。如：

Sometimes ignorance is as dangerous as conceit. 有时候无知和骄傲一样危险。

They believe businesses in other countries are not as competitive as those in America. 他们认为其他国家的企业不如美国的企业有竞争力。

7. 引导限定性定语从句，与 the same，such 连用，形成 the same... as，such... as 结构，关系代词在从句中作主语、宾语或表语，关系副词 as 在从句中作状语。如：

I don't like such people as were invited by him last night. （as 作主语）我不喜欢昨晚他邀请的那些人。

This is the same book as I read last week. （as 作宾语）这本书和我上周读的那本是一样的。

My hometown does not look the same as it was several years ago. （as 作表语）我的家乡和几年前不一样了。

Their society works in much the same way as human society. （as 作状语）它们的社会和人类社会一样运转。

8. 引导非限定性定语从句，可放在句首、句中、句末。如：

As we all know, most children like to play with animals. （as 作主语）众所周知，大多数孩子们喜欢和动物玩耍。

As is known to all, the economy of China is developing fast. 众所周知，中国经济正飞速发展。

9. 引导插入语。如：

The difference, as I see it, is one of method and not of principle. 这种差异，在我看来，在于方法而不是原则。

This idea must be, as it appears to me, cast away. 这种观点，在我看来，必须抛弃。（在我看来，这种观点必须抛弃。）

10. 由 as 构成的常用固定短语。

as soon as 一……就	as/so long as 只要
as to 关于，至于	as much/many as 作多达……多
so/as far as I know 就我所知	as a result, as a result of 由于……的结果
as well 也	as well as 不妨……也好
as a matter of fact 事实上	so/as far as... is concerned 就……而言

Grammar Test 1

1. The girl ________ mother is a teacher studies very hard.

A. which　　B. that　　C. its　　D. whose

2. ________ you return those books to the library immediately you will have to pay a fine.

A. Until　　B. Unless　　C. If　　D. Provided

3. Japan, ________ was isolated from the rest of world for nearly three hundred years, has now taken its place as a member of a world community.

A. where　　B. which　　C. that　　D. it

4. ________ fails to finish the task given should be criticized.

A. Any one　　B. Any one who　　C. Anyone who　　D. Anyone which

5. Evidence came up ________ specific speech sounds are recognized by babies as young as six months old.

A. what　　B. that　　C. whose　　D. which

6. ________ is known to the world, Mark Twain is one of the greatest American writers.

A. As　　B. That　　C. Which　　D. It

7. ________ he refuses to attend the meeting to be held tomorrow morning?

A. What if　　B. Only if　　C. Even if　　D. As if

8. The mere fact ________ most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.

A. what　　B. which　　C. that　　D. why

9. Human beings are different from animals ________ they can make use of languages.

A. whereas　　B. in that　　C. because of　　D. consequently

10. There is hardly an environment on earth ________ some species of animal or other has not adapted successfully.

A. to which　　B. wherever　　C. so that　　D. as to

11. He ________ that he didn't want to have anything to do with the matter.

A. made clean　　B. made it being clear　　C. made it clear　　D. made it to be clear

12. Mary bought a new dress last week, ________ was very high.

A. the price of which　　B. which price

C. price of which　　D. the price

13. ________ seems true that for the last fifty years the earth has been warming up by two degrees.

A. What　　B. This　　C. That　　D. It

14. The reason he wants to take a leave of absence is ________.

A. because he is needing a complete rest　　B. because he needs a complete rest

C. that he needs a complete rest　　D. because a complete rest is needed by him

15. The reason why I plan to go is ________ she will be disappointed if I don't.

A. as　　B. that　　C. since　　D. for

16. TV is ________ form of entertainment that many children spend more time watching it than reading books.

A. so popular a　　B. a such popular　　C. a so popular　　D. such popular a

17. ________ you are leaving tomorrow, we can eat dinner together tonight.

A. Since　　B. While　　C. For　　D. Because

18. He will surely finish the job on time ________ he's left to do it in his own way.

A. in that　　B. in case　　C. so long as　　D. as far as

19. ________ difficulties we may come across we'll help one another to overcome them.

A. Wherever　　B. Whatever　　C. However　　D. Whenever

20. They are discussing ________ to do next.

A. which　　B. what　　C. when　　D. that

21. I have no doubt ________ there will be plenty of youngsters at the party.

A. what　　B. which　　C. that　　D. one

22. ________ might be expected, the response to the question was very mixed.

A. That　　B. What　　C. As　　D. It

23. ________ is generally accepted, economic growth is determined by the smooth development of production.

A. What　　B. That　　C. As　　D. It

24. A few years ago, the belief became general ________ orange juice and milk should never be drunk at the same meal.

A. that　　B. so that　　C. and that　　D. now that

25. The children stay in the unit family _________ they grow up and marry.
A. because B. once C. after D. until
26. Mary had only a one-week vacation this year _________ her colleagues had more time off.
A. in spite that B. expect C. despite the fact that D. despite
27. I don't think the students are short of paper. But I'll leave some to them _________ they are.
A. unless B. until C. provided D. in case
28. Such electron tubes _________ in a radio set are also found in a TV set.
A. that we use B. as we use C. as we use them D. that we use them
29. _________ four years since John left school and found a job in a car factory.
A. They have been B. It is C. It was almost D. Those are
30. Although _________ happened in that developed country sounds like science fiction, it could occur elsewhere in the world.
A. this B. what C. how D. it

Keys:
1—5 D B B C B 6—10 A A C B A 11—15 C A D C B 16—20 A A C B B
21—25 C C C A D 26—30 C D B B B

Grammer Test 2

1. _________ you are free tonight, why not drop in and play chess with me?
A. For B. In that C. Because D. Now that
2. _________ we have begun talking about it, I'd better tell you the truth.
A. Now that B. For now C. Since that D. Since this
3. The video industry is developing so rapidly that almost anything _________ is written will be out of date by the time it is printed.
A. as B. which C. that D. what
4. Nobody had ever escaped such terrible accident; I am really doubtful _________ he is still alive.
A. that B. whether C. what D. when
5. Scarcely had they settled themselves in their seats in the theater _________ the curtain went up.
A. that B. when C. before D. as soon as
6. A man cannot be really happy if _________ he enjoys doing is ignored by society as of no value.
A. that B. when C. all what D. what
7. He has such a fierce dog _________ no one dares to go near his house.
A. as B. which C. that D. while
8. The reason _________ I'm writing is to tell you about my examination results.
A. because B. and C. why D. for
9. He will never forget the days _________ he spent with his grandma.
A. that B. when C. where D. on which
10. Look! The tree, the branches _________ are almost bare, is a very old one in the area.
A. whose B. in which C. of which D. which
11. She is pleased with what you have given her and _________ you have told her.
A. that B. which C. all what D. all that
12. Beer is the most popular drink among male drinkers, _________ overall consumption is significantly

higher than that of women.

A. which B. whose C. that D. what

13. The residents, ________ had been damaged by the flood, were given help by the Red Cross.

A. all their homes B. all of whose home C. all whose homes D. all of their homes

14. It was quite some time ________ the president managed to save his firm from near bankruptcy.

A. before B. that C. when D. until

15. I prefer his plan to yours, ________ it is more practical and easier to be carried out.

A. at that B. for that C. in that D. with that

16. The two noisy young men ________ should not be admitted to the conference are protesting loudly to the stewards.

A. whom B. who C. whose D. which

17. Jane will not lend you the book because she is fearful ________ you will forget to return it.

A. if B. whether C. that D. so that

18. The young girl finished her work successfully, ________ impressed us most.

A. which B. that C. it D. so that

19. The old woman was sure that the information could be of some help to ________ took over the job.

A. anyone B. whoever C. those D. the person

20. Here came the two mysterious fellows ________ were the cause of Jane's fears.

A. whom B. and C. that D. who

21. (1) ________, we all went to the park.

(2) ________, and we all went to the park.

A. Being a fine day B. Because the fine day

C. It was a fine? day D. It being a fine day

22. (1) They have invited us to visit their country, ________ is very kind of them.

(2) They have invited us to visit their country; ________ is very kind of them.

A. that B. it C. which D. what

23. (1) ________ is known to us all is that the earth goes around the sun.

(2) ________ is known to us all that the earth goes around the sun.

(3) ________ is known to us all, the earth goes around sun.

A. Which B. It C. As D. What

24. (1) ________, she knows a lot of things.

A. So young the girl is B. Young as the girl is

C. Young so the girl is D. As young the girl is

(2) ________, she isn't fit for the job.

A. As the girl is too young B. Too young as the girl is

C. As a young girl D. So young the girl is

25. (1) I have never seen such a clever man ________ he.

(2) He made such an excellent speech ________ everyone respected him.

A. like B. as C. that D. and

26. (1) ________ is well known to all, the earth is round.

(2) ________ is well known to all that the earth is round.

A. That B. With C. It D. As

27. (1) Is this the day ________ you visited the modern equipment last year?
(2) Is this the day ________ you spent together last year?
(3) Is this day ________ you spent together last year?
(4) Is this the day ________ you stayed in Beijing last year?
A. what B. that C. when D. which

28. (1) Is this the factory ________ you worked three years ago
(2) Is this factory ________ you worked three years ago
(3) This is the factory ________ we visited last year.
(4) This is the factory ________ my father is working at.
A. where B. which C. the one where D. in which
(5) This is the factory ________ produced color TV sets.
(6) This is the factory ________ color TV sets are produced.
A. where B. / C. that D. which

29. (1) The reason he has been such a success is ________ he never give up.
(2) The reason ________ I burst into tears is that I don't want to part from my mother.
(3) The reason ________ he told us sounds reasonable.
A. because B. that C. for D. why

30. (1) Can you tell me the way ________ you did the job
(2) Can you tell me the way ________ leads to the station
(3) He did it in the same way ________ you told him
A. how B. which C. as D. in which

Keys:

1—5 D A C B B	6—10 D C C A C	11—15 D B B A C	16—20 B C A B D
21 D C	22 C B	23 D B C	24 B A
25 B C	26 D C	27 C B D C	28 A C B B C A
29 B D B	30 D B C		

Constant dripping wears away the stone.
锲而不舍，金石可镂。
For man is man and master of his fate.
人就是人，是自己命运的主人。
While there is life, there is hope.
一息若存，希望不灭。
The good seaman is known in bad weather.
惊涛骇浪，方显英雄本色。

第四节 虚拟语气

概念：英语用不同的谓语动词形式表示说话人的不同意图，这种形式称为语气。英语中有三大语气：

陈述语气：陈述一个事实，或提出一种看法，有肯定、否定、疑问、感叹等形式。如：

He is late for class. 他上课迟到了。

He is interested in classical music. 他喜欢古典音乐。

祈使语气：用来表示请求、邀请、命令、警告或劝告等（常用动词原形）。如：

Keep off the grass. 勿踏草地！

虚拟语气：表示说话人所说的不是事实，而是一种假设、愿望、怀疑或者推测。如：

I would study very hard if I were you. 如果我是你，我会努力学习。

虚拟语气是一种特殊的谓语动词形式，主要用来表示一种假设的情况或主观的愿望，是一种表示非真实情况或主观设想的动词形式。

1. 条件句中的虚拟语气

由 if 引导的虚拟条件句可以表示一种假设的情况或主观愿望。其主句、从句的谓语部分用法如下：

	if 从句时态	主句时态
与现在事实相反	did/were（不用 was）	would/should/could/might do
与过去事实相反	had done	would/should/could/might have done
与将来事实相反	did/were to do/should do	would/should/could/might do

1.1 与现在事实相反

If I were you, I would consider their proposal. 如果我是你，我会考虑他们的建议。

1.2 与过去事实相反

She would have come if she hadn't been so busy. 如果不是那么忙，她会来的。

If he had been here, he might have been able to help us. 如果他在这儿，他也许能帮助我们。

The conference wouldn't have been so successful if we hadn't made enough preparations. 如果我们没做充足的准备，会议不会这么成功。

1.3 与将来事实相反

If he came tomorrow, he wouldn't allow you to work with us. 如果他明天来，他不会允许你和我们一起工作。

If there should be an accident, it would be a tragedy. 如果发生意外，那将是一场悲剧。

If it were to rain tomorrow, the game would be put off. 如果明天下雨，比赛将推迟。

If I were to do it, I would do it in a different way. 如果我做这件事，我会用不同的方式做。

1.4 如果 if 条件句中的谓语动词中含有 were, had 或 should，有时可省略 if，将助动词提到主语前面。如：

Were I you, I wouldn't feel sorry. →If I were you, I wouldn't feel sorry. 如果我是你，我不会感到难过。

Had he come a little earlier, I might have met him. 如果他早一点来，我有可能见到他。

Had the doctor been available, the child would have been saved. 如果有医生的话，孩子就会得救。

Were he to leave tomorrow, I would go with him. 如果他明天走，我就和他一起去。

Should it rain tomorrow, we could stay at home. 如果明天下雨，我们可以待在家里。

Had it not been for your laziness, you could have finished the assignment by now. 要不是你懒惰，你本可以完成作业的。

1.5 错综时间虚拟条件句中的虚拟语气

在使用虚拟语气的复合句中，有时主句和从句的谓语动词所发生的时间不一致，这种情况叫

作错综时间条件句。在错综时间条件句中，主句和从句应根据各自的时间状语选用适当的虚拟语气形式。如：

If I had taken my raincoat when I came out this morning, I would not be wet now. （过去—现在）如果我今天早上出来的时候带上雨衣，现在我就不会淋湿了。

If I were you, I wouldn't have missed the film last night. （现在—过去）如果我是你，我就不会错过昨晚的电影了。

If the ship had left at noon, it would be passing through the canal now. （过去—现在进行）如果船中午离开的话，现在就要经过运河了。

If they had left home in early morning, they would arrive in half an hour. （过去—将来）如果他们清早离开家，半小时后就到了。

If you hesitated this moment, you might suffer in future. （现在—将来）如果你此刻犹豫不决，你将来会吃苦头的。

If Mary should arrive today, she might have started three days ago. （将来—过去）如果玛丽今天到，她可能是三天前就出发了。

2. 含蓄虚拟条件句中的虚拟语气

含蓄虚拟条件句指没有明确的条件从句的虚拟语气句，其条件一般用介词短语、分词短语或并列句表达，这时主句的时态要求与含有条件从句的主句相同。常用于这种情况的词或短语有：with, without, otherwise, but for, but that, in the past, or, supposing, suppose 等。如：

Under different circumstances, I would have said yes. 要是在不同的情况下我就会说是的。

Without his aid, I couldn't have finished the task on time. 要是没有他的帮助，我无法按时完成任务。

She wasn't feeling well. Otherwise, she wouldn't have left the meeting so early. 她觉得不舒服。否则，她不会这么早离开会场。

But for the rain, we would have had a pleasant journey. 要不是下雨，我们的旅途会很愉快。

But that he saw it (= If he had not seen it), he would not have believed it. 要不是亲眼看见，他不会相信。

3. 名词性从句中的虚拟语气

名词性从句中的虚拟语气大都与谓语动词有关，一般来说，这些标志词常表示建议、请求、命令、主张等意思。同时注意名词性从句中的虚拟语气形式 should do，其中 should 可以省略，但不能用其他词汇代替。

3.1 suggest, propose, order, demand, require, command, request, desire, beg, insist, urge, advise, decide, move（建议）, recommend, deserve, determine, prefer, vote（建议）, ask 等词后面的宾语从句中常使用虚拟语气。如：

He requested that all members (should) attend the meeting. 他要求全体成员出席会议。

We urged that she (should) reconsider the offer, but failed. 我们敦促她再考虑一下这个建议，但是没有成功。

3.2 insist 的用法：其后可接 that 从句，但要根据不同的意思分为两种情况：

① 表示“坚持要，一定要”，从句所指的一般是尚未实现的事实，此时谓语通常用虚拟语气（即 should + 动词原形），而且引导词 that 一般不省略（尤其是当已经省略 should 时）。如：

The detective insisted that he should have a look. 警探坚持要查看。

I insisted that he (should) go with us. 我坚持要他和我们一块儿去。

② 表示“坚持说，坚持认为”，从句所指的通常是已经发生的事或已存在的状态，谓语一般

用陈述语气，引导词 that 可省略。如：

He still insisted he wasn't there at the time. 他仍然坚持说他当时不在那里。

John insisted that he heard somebody in the house. 约翰坚持说他听到房子里有人。

金句：He insisted that he was not ill, but the doctor insisted that he should take the medicine. 他坚持说他没有病，但医生却坚持要他服药。

3.3　suggest 的用法：

① 意思为“建议”，可接 that 宾语从句，that 从句用 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略

She suggested that the class meeting (should) not be held on Saturday. 她建议周六的班会取消。

We suggested that he (should) go and make an apology to his teacher. 我们建议他去向老师道歉。

② 有“暗示、表明”的意思，其主语往往是事物，而不是人。

The decision suggested that he might bring his family. 这个决定表明他可以把家属带来。

The expression on his face suggested that he was very angry. 他脸上的表情表明他很生气。

3.4　主语从句中的虚拟语气主要用在以下两种结构中：

① It's + 表示愿望、请求、建议、命令的动词过去分词 + that 从句时，从句中用 should + do，should 可以省略。

It's proposed/required/suggested/desired/ordered/decided/arranged/recommended that… 如：

It is proposed that we should get everything ready by tonight. 建议我们在今晚之前把一切准备好。

It is required that every student (should) work hard. 要求每一个学生都（应该）努力学习。

② It is + 表示重要、有必要、吃惊、难以相信的名词或形容词 + that 从句时，从句中用 should + do，should 可以省略。

It's necessary/important/natural/essential/impossible/strange/incredible/advisable/
vital/crucial/pity/surprise/wonder that...

It is necessary that he (should) be sent to prison at once. 他必须立即被送进监狱。

It is important that we (should) learn English well. 我们学好英语是很重要的。

It's a real surprise that the economy in that region (should) develop so fast. 令人惊讶的是，该地区的经济发展速度如此之快。

3.5　表示愿望、请求、建议、命令的名词后的表语从句和同位语从句中同样要使用 should + do 形式，should 可以省略。表示这些概念的标志词如下：suggestion, idea, plan, proposal, recommendation, advice, decision, instruction, insistence, preference, necessity, requirement, demand, resolution, motion, desire 等。如：

The professor gave orders that the test (should) be finished before 10:30. 教授命令测试在 10:30 之前完成。

His proposal is that the dam (should) be built at the foot of the mountain. 他的建议是把大坝建在山脚下。

What is of importance is that our representations (should) be sent to the conference. 重要的是我们的陈述（应该）被发送到会议上。

4. 其他状语从句

4.1　在由 in case, for fear that, lest 引导的目的状语从句中谓语常使用虚拟语气，形式为：(should) do。如：

Here is some money in case you (should) need it. 这里有一些钱，以备你需要它。

He is working hard for fear that he (should) fall behind. 他正在努力工作，唯恐落在后面。

The driver looked over the engine carefully lest it (should) go wrong on the way. 司机仔细检查发动

机，以免上路后发动机出故障。

4.2 as if/as though 引导的方式状语从句中的虚拟语气用法如下：

	as if/as though 引导的从句时态
表示与现在事实相反	一般过去时 did/were
表示与过去事实相反	过去完成时 had done
表示与将来事实相反	would/could/might + do

He acts as if he were an expert. 他表现得就像个专家。

He appeared as if/as though he had known nothing about it. 他显得好像他对这件事一无所知。

He opened his mouth as if he would say something. 他张开嘴，好像要说什么似的。

如若 as if 从句中的动作是极有可能发生的事情，则从句的谓语动词使用陈述语气。如：

It looks as if it is going to rain. 天看起来好像要下雨了。

It seems as if he has been to America. 他好像已经去过美国了。

4.3 让步状语从句中的特殊虚拟语气用法如下：

Everything around us, be it air or water, (whether it should be air or water) is matter. 我们周围的一切，无论是空气还是水都是重要的。

Be he rich or poor, she will marry him all the same. 不管他贫穷还是富有，她都愿嫁给他。

Be it good or bad, we will set off as we have planned. 不管天气是好还是坏，我们都会按计划出发。

Whatever/No matter what you may say, I'll do what I have planned. 不管你说什么，我都会按照我的计划去做。

5. It is (about, high) time that... 意思为：是该……的时候了。that 可省略，time 可由 high, about修饰，从句中的谓语动词有两种形式：用动词的过去式（be 用 were），或者用 should + 动词原形（should 不能省略）。此句型为虚拟语气句型，表示“现在某人该做某事了”。含有该事早该去做而未做，现在去做似乎都为时已晚的意思。如：

It's time (that) we went to bed. 我们该去睡觉了。

It's high time that the article were published. 是该发表这篇文章的时候了。

It's time you should do cleaning. 你该去打扫卫生了。

It's high/about time that he stopped smoking. 他该戒烟了。

It seems to be high time that this argument were put to an end. 我们的争吵该结束了。

5.1 It's time 的用法

① It's time for + *n.* 意思为：“该是（干）……的时候了。” 如：

Boys and girls, It's time for class. 同学们，该上课了。

② It's time + (for sb.) to do sth. 意思为：“该是（某人）干……的时候了。” 如：

It's time for you to clean the classroom. 该是你打扫教室的时候了。

It's time to go to school. 该去上学了。

③ It's + 序数词 + time + to do sth. 表示某人第几次做某事。如：

It is my first time to write letters in English. 这是我第一次用英语写信。

It's + the + 序数词 + time + that 从句. 也表示某人第几次做某事。如：

It is my first time that I've even written letters. 这是我第一次写信。

注意：这两个句型可以互换。

6. 其他形式的虚拟语气

6.1 would rather that... 宁愿，但愿（最好，可能性极小）= would sooner that//had rather that/would just as soon 如：

	that 从句时态
表示与现在事实相反的愿望	一般过去时 did/were
表示与过去事实相反的愿望	过去完成时 had done
表示将来的愿望	一般过去时 did/were

He would rather it were winter now. 他宁愿现在是冬天。

Jim would rather that Tom had gone to the class. 吉姆宁愿汤姆去上课。

I would rather that you called me tomorrow. 我宁愿你明天打电话给我。

would rather that... 与 would rather ... than... 的区别：

would rather that 后面接从句，意思为："宁愿……"。

would rather... than... ./would... rather than... . 意思为："宁愿……而不……"。后接省去 to 的动词不定式。如：

We would rather rent the house than buy it outright. 我们宁愿租这所房子而不是直接买下它。

Would rather die than surrender. 宁死不投降。

I'd rather play tennis than swim. 我宁愿打网球也不愿游泳。

6.2 wish 表示强烈的主观愿望，其宾语从句常用虚拟语气。

	that 从句所用时态
表示与现在事实相反的愿望	一般过去时 did/were
表示与过去事实相反的愿望	had done 或 could/would have done
表示对将来的愿望	would/could/should/might do

I wish I were 30 years younger. 要是我年轻 30 岁就好了。/我多么希望我年轻 30 岁。

I wish I could see him now. 我希望现在能见到他。

I wish you hadn't told me all this. 我真希望你没告诉我这一切。

She wished she could have been there yesterday. 她真希望昨天能去那儿。

I wish she would come tomorrow. 我希望她明天来。

6.3 If only 与 wish 一样，不过比 wish 有更强烈的感情色彩。如：

If only the explosion had not happened! 要是爆炸没有发生就好了!

If only you hadn't done that! 要是你没做那件事就好了!

If only I were you! 但愿我是你!/我要是你就好了!

6.4 If it were not for... 意思为："要不是……，如果没有……"，表明与现在事实相反的假设；

If it had not been for... 意思为："要不是……，如果当时没有……"，表示与过去事实相反的假设。如：

If it were not for the rain, the crops should (would) die. 天要是不下雨，庄稼就旱死了。

If it had not been for the leadership of the Party, we could not be living a happy life today. 要不是党的领导，我们今天就不能过上幸福的生活。

Grammar Test

1. But for the traffic jam this morning, I ________ late for the meeting.

A. wouldn't have been B. wouldn't be
C. shouldn't be D. hadn't been

2. Under another social system such floods ________ terrible disasters.

A. would have caused B. will cause
C. will have caused D. have caused

3. This great change ________ in China without a solid agricultural foundation.

A. will not take place B. cannot take place
C. couldn't have taken place D. doesn't take place

4. If Tom had worked harder before the exam he ________ the exam.

A. must have got through B. would get through
C. would have got through D. won't get through

5. If I hadn't stood under the ladder to catch you when you fell, you ________ now.

A. couldn't have smiled B. wouldn't be smiling
C. didn't smile D. won't be smiling

6. Jack wishes that he ________ business instead of history when he was in university.

A. studied B. study
C. had been studying D. had studied

7. Sometimes I wish I ________ in a different time and a different place.

A. be living B. were living
C. would live D. would have lived

8. The millions of calculations involved, had they been done by hand, ________ all practical value by the time they were finished.

A. had lost B. would have lost C. would lose D. should lost

9. ________ right now, she would get there on Sunday.

A. Would she leave B. If she leaves
C. Were she to leave D. If she had left

10. Look at the terrible situation I am in! If only I ________ your advice.

A. follow B. had followed C. would follow D. have followed

11. Many a delegate was in favor of his proposal that committee ________ to investigate the incident.

A. was set up B. were set up C. set up D. be set up

12. Allen's uncle insists ________ in this small hotel.

A. staying not B. not to stay
C. that he would not stay D. that he not stay

13. The suggestion that the mayor ________ the prize was accepted by everyone.

A. would present B. present C. presents D. ought to present

14. It is important that the hotel receptionist ________ that guest are registered correctly.

A. make sure B. has made sure C. made sure D. must make sure

15. It is essential that these application forms ________ back as early as possible.

A. must be sent B. will be sent C. are sent D. be sent

16. That tree looked as if it ________ for a long time.

A. hasn't watered B. hadn't been watered
C. didn't water D. wasn't watered

17. He speaks Chinese as fluently as if he ________ a Chinese.
A. were B. had been C. is D. has been

18. The mad man was put in the soft-padded cell lest he ________ himself.
A. injure B. had injured C. injured D. would injure

19. The young driver looked over the engine carefully lest it ________ on the way.
A. goes wrong B. should go wrong C. went wrong D. would go wrong

20. "You are very selfish. It's high time you ________ that you are not the most important person in the world," Edgar said to his boss angrily.
A. have realized B. should realize C. realize D. realized

21. It's already 5 o'clock now. Don't you think it's about time ________?
A. we are going home B. we go home
C. we went home D. we can go home

22. John's pale face suggested that he ________ ill, and his parents suggested that he ________ a medical examination.
A. be; should have B. was; has C. should be; had D. was; have

23. The manager would rather his daughter ________ in the same office.
A. had not worked B. not to work C. doesn't work D. did not work

24. Wouldn't you rather your child ________ to bed early?
A. go B. went C. would go D. goes

25. We didn't know his telephone number, otherwise, we ________ him.
A. would have telephoned B. must have telephoned
C. would telephone D. had telephoned

26. But for the English examination, I ________ to the concert last Sunday.
A. would have gone B. have gone C. go D. went

27. ________, we will set off as we planned.
A. Were it good or bad B. Be it good or bad
C. Being good or bad D. Whether good or bad

28. It is highly desirable that every effort ________ to reduce pollution in Beijing.
A. was made B. be made C. will be made D. would be made

29. I can't speak Japanese, but I do wish I ________.
A. can B. could C. had D. spoke

30. It turned out what her father left her was the plain ring her mother had been wearing when she was alive. She ________ happier if it had been diamonds.
A. mustn't have B. couldn't have C. shouldn't be D. couldn't have been

31. I was ill that day, otherwise I ________ part in the parade.
A. would take B. would have taken C. took D. had taken

32. Please accept my sincere thanks. ________ your help, I would not have succeeded.
A. Because B. Because of C. But D. But for

33. I wish Susan knew how to apply grammatical rules properly and ________ the fact that she is nearly always in the wrong.

A. recognize　　B. recognized　　C. recognizing　　D. to recognize

34. If I had been to the party last week, I ________ sorry for it now.

A. would not be feeling　　B. wouldn't have felt

C. mustn't feel　　D. should have felt

35. ________, I will marry him all the same.

A. Were he rich or poor　　B. Being rich or poor

C. Be he rich or poor　　D. Whether rich or poor

36. Things might have been much worse if the mother ________ on her right to keep the baby.

A. had insisted　　B. was been insisting

C. insisted　　D. would insist

37. If there were life on Mars, such life forms ________ unable to survive on earth.

A. would be　　B. are　　C. will be　　D. should

38. If the whole operation ________ beforehand, a great deal of time and money would have been lost.

A. was not planned　　B. has not been planned

C. had not been planned　　D. were not planned

39. It is strange that such a thing ________ in your school.

A. will happen　　B. should happen

C. happens　　D. happened

40. But that you helped me, I ________ the French examination.

A. couldn't pass　　B. couldn't have passed

C. didn't pass　　D. can't pass

41. Everything ________ if Albert hadn't called the fire brigade.

A. will be destroyed　　B. will have been destroyed

C. would be destroyed　　D. would have been destroyed

42. Supposing this ship ________, do you think there would be enough life jackets for all the passengers?

A. was sinking　　B. has sunk　　C. were to sink　　D. sunk

43. The teacher suggested that each student ________ a plan for the vacation.

A. made　　B. make　　C. makes　　D. will make

44. Frankly, I'd rather you ________ anything about it for the time being.

A. do　　B. don't do　　C. didn't do　　D. will not do

45. It's high time you ________.

A. start to work　　B. would start to work

C. started to work　　D. had started to work

46. It is imperative that you ________ there in person.

A. are　　B. were　　C. be　　D. will be

47. The atomic structure is, ________, a miniature solar system.

A. as it was　　B. as if they were　　C. as it were　　D. as if are

48. We required that the machine parts ________ cast iron.

A. is made of　　B. be made from　　C. be made of　　D. is made by

49. The management urged that the cost of production ________.

A. to be further reduced　　B. was further reduced

C. be further reduced D. should further reduce

50. I wish our teacher ________ to give another test. I haven't got prepared yet.

A. isn't going B. weren't going C. will not going D. could have gone

51. I'd just as soon ________ rudely to her.

A. that you won't speak B. your not speaking

C. you not speak D. you didn't speak

52. It is required that the machine ________ as frequently as necessary.

A. be oiled B. must be oiled C. is oiled D. will oil

53. His English teacher recommends that he ________ a regular degree program.

A. begins B. begin C. will begin D. is beginning

54. We prefer that the plan ________ before being put into execution.

A. is fully discussed B. must be fully discussed

C. be fully discussed D. will be fully discussed

55. What do you think of his proposal that improvements ________ in the old type of vacuum cleaner?

A. be made B. will be made

C. would be made D. will have to be made

56. The doctor's advice is that the patient ________ about his real physical condition.

A. be not told B. not be told

C. will not be told D. must not be told

57. They thought it desirable that an armed guard ________ in readiness.

A. stands B. stand C. stood D. would stand

58. The driver looked over the engine carefully lest it ________ on the way.

A. goes wrong B. go wrong C. went wrong D. would go wrong

59. ________ the fog, we should have reached our destination.

A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. But for

60. He is working hard for fear that he ________ to pass the exam.

A. fails B. may fail C. should fail D. would fail

Keys:

1—5 A A C C B	6—10 D B B C B	11—15 D D B A D	16—20 B A A B D
21—25 C D D B A	26—30 A B B B D	31—35 B D B A C	36—40 A A C B B
41—45 D C B C B	46—50 C C C C B	51—55 D A B C A	56—60 A B B D C

A rolling stone gathers no moss.

滚石不生苔，转业不聚财。

As a man sows, so he shall reap.

种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。

A single flower does not make a spring.

一花独放不是春，百花齐放春满园。

A snow year, a rich year.

瑞雪兆丰年。

第五节 非谓语动词

概念：非谓语动词指的是在句中起名词、形容词或副词作用的动词形式，而不是做谓语的动词形式。动词的非谓语形式分为动名词、分词、动词不定式。

A. 不定式：(Infinitive)

1. 定义及几种形式

不定式是英语中三种非谓语动词的一种，分带 to 的不定式和不带 to 的不定式两种。

不定式有以下几种形式：

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	to study	to be studied
进行式	to be studying	
完成式	to have studied	to have been studied
完成进行式	to have been studying	

1.1 一般式表示动作或状态与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生或在其之后发生。如：

I'm glad to see you. 很高兴见到你。

We hope to visit you someday. 我们希望有一天能去拜访你。

1.2 进行式表示在谓语动作发生时不定式正在进行。如：

The train seems to be moving. 火车似乎在动。

I'd rather read than watch TV, the programs seem to be getting worse all the time. 我宁愿看书也不愿看电视，电视节目似乎越来越糟。

1.3 完成式表示不定式动作在谓语动作之前发生。如：

I'm sorry to have missed the film. 我很遗憾错过了那部电影。

1.4 完成进行式表示截止到谓语动作发生之时不定式动作从过去某一时刻开始一直在进行的动作。如：

He is said to have been working instead of studying in the U. S. 据说他一直在工作而不是在美国学习。

2. 不定式的主动语态与被动语态

当不定式的逻辑主语是不定式表示动作的承受者时用其被动语态，这时要看看句中有没有出现不定式动作的执行者，若有则用主动语态，若无则用被动语态。如：

The box is too heavy for me to carry. 这只箱子太重，我搬不动。

No one hopes to be laughed at like that. 没有人喜欢被嘲笑。

Mr. Johnson preferred to be given heavier work to do. 约翰逊先生喜欢被委以重任。

不过，某些形容词后面的不定式通常用主动式表示被动含义。如：

English is very difficult to speak. 英语很难讲。

The magazine is interesting to read. 这本杂志读起来很有趣。

有时，不定式虽然用了主动形式，却表达被动意义。如：

I have a few words to say. 我有几句话要说。

English is difficult to learn. 英语很难学。

3. 不定式所作的成分

不定式不可以作谓语，但可以作主语、宾语、宾补、定语、表语、状语、还可以有自己的逻辑主语。

3.1 不定式作主语

① 不定式直接作主语：

To hesitate means failure. 犹豫不决就意味着失败。

To do this is to cut the foot to fit the shoe. 这样做是削足适履。（主语和表语均用不定式）

For him to admit his mistakes is not easy. 要他承认错误是不容易的。（带逻辑主语）

To be working all day long is a bore. 整天干活使人厌倦。（不定式进行式）

To have known you is a privilege. 认识你真是荣幸。（不定式完成式）

② 不定式作主语时常用 it 作形式主语（但不可用 that 作形式主语），不定式则移至谓语之后，这种情况多见于口语中。常见句型为：It is/was + 形容词 + of/for sb. + to do sth.

不定式的逻辑主语一般由介词 for 引导。如果是表示人的性格品质、行为特征的形容词（kind, thoughtful, considerate, greedy, generous, honest, modest, polite, rude, cruel, selfish, lazy, wicked, wrong, foolish, wise, clever, careless, careful, courageous, brave, silly, stupid, good, nice 等）作表语时不定式的逻辑主语由 of 引导。如：

It's difficult for her to answer such a complicated question in English. 他用英语回答这么复杂的问题是很困难的。

It is necessary for him to return the book immediately. 他必须立即归还这本书。

It's clever of you to have invented such a device. 你真聪明，竟然发明了这样的装置。

It's foolish of them to believe like this. 相信这些对他们来说是愚蠢的。

3.2 不定式作宾语

① 后跟不定式作宾语的动词有：begin/start, manage, agree, refuse, plan, tend, try, pretend, fail, hope, wish, promise, choose, prepare, decided, afford, determine, aim, ask, claim, intend, attempt, expect, desire, guarantee, endeavor, long, mean, offer, pledge, proceed, prove, resolve, request, wait, would like 等。如：

I meant to give you this book today but I forgot. 我本来打算今天给你这本书，可是我忘了。

The boys attempted to leave for camping but were stopped by their parents. 男孩们试图去野营，但是被他们的父母阻止了。

② 后跟省略 to 的不定式作宾语的动词短语有：had better/best（not）do, would rather do than do, rather than do, would sooner/would just as soon do, may/might as well do 等。如：

Would rather die than surrender. 宁死不降。

Rather than run the risk of losing the job Johnson came to terms with them. 不愿意冒险丢掉工作，约翰逊对他们妥协了。

Since you've read the books we might as well sell them. 既然你已看过这些书了，我们不如把它们卖了。

③ 某些特定动词 consider, know, imagine, think, remember, understand, learn, forget（表思维活动）；see, hear, feel,（感官动词）等后面要求用"动词 + wh-疑问副词 + 动词不定式"结构，属于不定式作宾语。如：

They asked how to get to the railway station. 他们询问去火车站怎么走。

3.3 不定式作宾语补足语

① 用于"谓语动词 + 宾语 + 不定式"结构式的动词有 25 个常用动词，易记口诀如下：

三个希望两答应，hope，wish，expect，agree，promise
两个要求莫拒绝。demand，ask，refuse
设法学会做决定，manage，learn，decide/determine
不要假装在选择。pretend，choose/select
打算提出两计划，intend，offer，plan，mean
申请失败负担起，apply，fail，afford
准备愿望又碰巧。prepare，desire，happen

另外还要动词：force/compel/oblige，tell，advise，convince，allow，require，beg，bear，cause，warn，promise，persuade，forbid，like，encourage，enable，order，permit，urge，remind，inform，invite，want。如：

Please remind me not to be late for the meeting. 请提醒我开会别迟到了。

His conscience compelled him to confess. 良心迫使他坦白。

The thief was forcing him to drive a bomb to Downing Street. 小偷强迫他送一颗炸弹去唐人街。

② 某些动词所带的复合宾语结构中，不定式结构要求是“谓语动词 + 宾语 + to be...”，如：

类似的动词有：declare，discover，think，prove，suppose，find，know，imagine，judge，understand，consider 等。如：

I know him to be a liar. 我知道他是个骗子。

I suppose him to be away from home. 我猜测他不在家。

I consider him（to be）my best friend. 我把他视为我最好的朋友。

说明：think，consider，find 后可省 to be。如：

We all think him dead. 我们都以为他死了。

③ 后接省 to 的不定式作宾补的动词：一感 feel；二听 listen to，hear；三让 make，let，have，四看 see，watch，notice，observe；半帮助 help。如：

At first I was nervous but soon he made me feel at ease. 起初的时候我感觉很紧张，但是不久他就让我感到很放松。

We observed the storekeeper close the door early that day. 我们观察到店主那天早早地关门了。

I enjoy helping my mother（to）do housework. 我很愿意帮妈妈做家务。

注意：被动语态中，to 不能省略。

He was seen to take the money. 有人看见他拿钱了。

He was made to leave school by his father's death. 他父亲的离世使得他不得不辍学。

④ 在下列结构后常用不带 to 的动词不定式：had better，would rather，do nothing but，why not。如：I'd better go now，or I'll miss the rain. 我最好现在就走，否则就赶不上火车了。

If you'd rather be alone，we'll all leave here. 如果你宁愿独自待着，那我们都离开这儿。

3.4　不定式作定语

不定式作定语可修饰名词、代词。具体用法可分以下几种：

① 被修饰的名词前有序数词、形容词最高级或 next，last，the only 等限定词时常用不定式做后置定语。如：

He was the first man to set foot on the moon. 他是第一位登上月球的人。

She is the only one to survive the crash. 她是这次失事中唯一的幸存者。

② 常常用不定式作定语的名词：ability（能力），ambition（志向），anxiety（期望），attempt（尝试），curiosity（好奇心），decision（决定），desire（愿望），disposition（意向），failure（未能），freedom（自由），inclination（爱好，倾向），mind（愿望），obligation（义务），offer（主动

提供），permission（允许），plan（计划），promise（许诺），refusal（拒绝），reluctance（不愿），temptation（诱惑），tendency（倾向），willingness（愿意），wish（愿望），yearning（渴望）等。如：

A characteristic of the camel is its ability to live for a long time without water. 骆驼的特点是不喝水也能活很长时间。

His ambition to become the world swimming champion was understandable. 他想成为世界游泳冠军的野心是可以理解的。

Her anxiety to go was obvious. 很明显，她很想去。

All their attempts to reach the summit failed. 他们攀登顶峰的所有尝试都失败了。

His desire to do it blinded him to all the difficulties. 他想做那件事的欲望使他看不到所有的困难。

There was a general disposition to ignore the problem. 人们一般都忽视了这个问题。

His failure to react quickly enough caused the crash. 他由于反应不够迅速而导致了撞车。

不定式作定语与被修饰的中心词之间存在逻辑上的主谓关系、动宾关系、同位关系或动状关系。如：

Attention, please. I have a few words to say. （动宾关系）请注意，我说几句话。

He is always the first person to come. （主谓关系）他总是第一个到达的人。

Their decision to give up the experiment surprised. （同位关系）他们放弃这个实验的决定使我们吃惊。

We need somewhere to sleep. （动状关系）我们需要睡觉的地方。

③ 若该不定式中的动词是不及物动词时，不定式结尾表示动宾关系的介词不要去掉。如：

I haven't got a chair to sit on. 我没有椅子坐。

Children use pencils to write with. 孩子们用铅笔写字。

④“介词 + which + 不定式”这一结构也可以做定语，which 代替前面的中心词。如：

I believe that is a proper standard by which to judge people. 我认为那是衡量人的一个合适的标准。

You have a number of topic from which to choose. 你有许多题目可以选择。

3.5 不定式作表语

① 通常说明或解释主语的内容，表目的，也可以表示将来的动作。

The next step is to make sure that you know exactly what is required. 下一步你要真正弄清楚需要的是什么。

My dream is to become a teacher. 我的梦想是当一名老师。

The purpose of education is to develop a fine personality in children. 教育的目的是发展儿童完美的品格。

②“be + to do sth.”表示按计划安排要做的事，或表示命令、要求或用来征求意见。

We are to meet at the school gate at six. 我们打算 6 点钟在学校门口会面。

The highway is to be opened in October. 高速公路于 10 月份开通。

③ 可用主动形式表示被动意义。

She is to blame. 她应该受到责备。

A great deal is yet to do. 还有许多事要做。

Something is still to find out. 有些东西还有待查明。

3.6 不定式作状语

一般来说不定式在句中通常作目的、原因和结果状语。

① 不定式作目的状语可以放在句首，也可以放在句末。放在句首时，需要用逗号与句子隔开，

放在句末时不需要隔开。如：

To catch the first bus, Li Lei started out early. 为了赶上早班公共汽车，李雷很早就出发了。

Mom opened the window to let some fresh air in. 妈妈敞开窗户通通风。

注意：为了强调，目的状语可以用 in order to do 或者 so as to do。in order to do 放在句子前后均可，放在句首时，需要加逗号与句子隔开。而 so as to do 只能放在后面。如：

He went there early so as to/in order to get a good seat. 他去得早，以便找到个好座位。

In order to get a good seat, he went there early. 为了找个好座位，他去得很早。

In order not to wake the baby, we went in quietly. 为了不吵醒小孩，我们轻轻地走了进去。

② 原因状语往往要放在表示人的喜怒哀乐等情感的形容词或分词之后，anxious, eager, dangerous, pleasant/happy/pleased/glad, hard, easy, difficult, strange, surprised, ready, likely, sure, certain, sorry, bored, usual, common, useless, lucky/fortunate, prepared, supposed 等，用在“be + *adj.* + to do”结构中，注意不要用逗号隔开。如：

That is not likely to happen. 这种情况不太可能发生。

He was fortunate enough to have a good income. 他很幸运，有很好的收入。

It is useless to argue with them. 和他们争论是没有用的。

I am glad to see you. 我很高兴见到你。

Many people are content to live a simple life. 许多人满足于过简单的生活。

He was supposed to have left for Italy last week. 他本该上周去意大利的。

③ 不定式作结果状语，注意下面几种情况：

only to do 表示出人意料、意想不到的结果。如：

We hurried to the railway station only to find the train had left. 我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站，却发现火车已经开走了。

enough to do 和 too...to do 结构可以换用。如：

The boy isn't old enough to go to school. = The boy is too young to go to school. 这个男孩还没有到上学的年龄。

so (such)...as to do 结构意为“如此……以致……”。如：

I am not such a fool as to believe a cheat. 我不是相信骗子的那种傻瓜。

He is so kind as to help the old lady off the bus. 他很好心，帮老夫人下车。

④ 一般说来不定式作状语的逻辑主语必须是主句主语，主句主语和不定式的动词存在着动作上的主谓和动宾关系。因此不定式短语作状语可以转化为相应的状语从句。如：

In order not to be heard, they talked in a low voice. →

They talked in a low voice in order that (so that) they should not be heard. (目的状语)

为了不被听见，他们说话的声音很低。

His father went to Taiwan in 1949 never to be heard from. →

His father went to Taiwan in 1949 so that he wasn't be heard from. (结果状语) 他的父亲 1949 年去了台湾，因此他再也没有收到父亲的来信。

4. 含有 but 的句型：

4.1 There is/have nothing to do but do, (can) do nothing but do, have no alternative/choice but to do 意思为“除了做……别无选择”，but 前有 do，but 后的不定式省 to；but 前没有 do，but 后的不定式带 to，即：有 do 省 to，没 do 带 to。如：

He does nothing but wait. /He did nothing but wait. (有 do 无 to) 他除了等，什么也不做。

I have nothing to do but sleep all the time. (有 do 无 to) 我除了睡觉以外，没有别的事可做。

I have nothing to deal with but to read the newspaper. （没有 do 要加 to）我除了看报纸，没有什么要处理的。

He had no alternative/choice but to agree. 他别无选择，只好同意。

There is no choice but to wait. 除了等待，别无选择。

4.2　can't but do 意思为“不得不”；can't help but do （= can't help doing sth.）意思为“禁不住，忍不住，情不自禁”。如：

She can't but do the housework. 她不得不做家务

She can't help but wonder what he was thinking. 她不禁琢磨他在想些什么。

He is so poor and has no choice but to drop school. 他太穷了，没有别的选择，只好辍学了。

5. 句型转换：

句型“It is said/reported/thought/supposed that sb...”可以转换成：

Sb. is said/reported/thought/supposed
- to do（现在和将来时态）
- to be doing（正在进行时态）
- to have done（过去时态）

用例句分析该句型的转换：

They say that Mary is very happy in London. （宾语从句）他们说玛丽在伦敦很幸福。

→It is said that Mary is very happy in London. （主语从句，it 是形式主语，that 是主语从句的连接词，Mary 是真正的主语）据说玛丽在伦敦很幸福。

→Mary is said to be very happy in London. （简单句，to be very happy in London 是主语补足语）据说玛丽在伦敦很幸福。

It is said that he is rich. →

He is said to be rich. 据说他很富有。

It is believed that he is living aboard. →

He is believed to be living abroad. 据说他一直生活在国外。

It is said that he has moved to Chicago. →

He is said to have moved to Chicago. 据说他搬到了芝加哥。

It is known that book has been translated into ten languages. →

The book is known to have been translated into ten languages. 众所周知，那本书被翻译成了 10 种语言。

6. 独立的动词不定式具有插入语的性质，表示说话人的态度或看法。下面是常见用作插入语的动词不定式短语：

to be brief 简单地说
to be frank with you 坦白地对你说
to be honest 诚实地说
to be precise 准确地说
to do one justice 公平地说
to speak candidly 坦率地说
to make a long story short 简单地说/长话短说
to sum up 总之
to put it briefly 简而言之
so to speak 可以说
to be sure 的确；当然
to be fair 说句公道话；公平而论
to be truthful 诚实地说
to tell/say/speak the truth 老实说/坦白地说
to begin/start with 首先
to make matters worse 更糟糕的是
to cut a long story short 简单地说
to put it mildly 说得委婉些
to put it another way 换个说法

To tell the truth, that is all I know about him. 说实话，这是我对他的全部了解。

To begin with, I would like to talk about my new plan. 首先，我想谈谈我的新计划。

7. There to be 结构

There be 的非谓语形式有两种，即 there to be 和 there being。

7.1 作主语

当作主语时，一般是 there being 结构，当句式中有 for 时，一般用 there to be。

There being a shop here is a great advantage. 这儿有个商店，真是方便极了。

It is impossible for there to be any more. 不可能再有了。

7.2 作宾语

如果是动词宾语，要看这个动词，我们学过有些动词后面只能接动名词，比如 mind，enjoy，appreciate 等词后跟 doing 的形式；而这些动词同样适用于 there being，不能用 there to be。有些动词只能接不定式，如 want，hope，would like 等，后面就接 there to be。常见动词有：expect，mean，intend want，prefer 等。如：

I don't mind the being picture on the wall. 我不介意墙上有幅画。

We expect there to be no argument. 我希望没有争吵。

Would you like there to be a picture on the wall? 你喜欢墙壁上挂一张画吗?

We don't want there to be any comrade lagging behind. 我们不希望有一个同志掉队。

注意：作介词的宾语一般用 there being 句式，但当在 for 后时一般用 there to be 句式。

This depended on there being a sudden change. 这需要有一个突然的改变。

The teacher was waiting for there to be complete silence. 老师在等着大家都安静下来。

They planned on there being another meeting. 他们打算再开一次会。

There is now some hope of there being a settlement of the dispute. 现在还有点希望可以解决这次争端。

7.3 作状语

用作状语的 there be 的形式通常用 there being 结构。如：

There being no buses, we had to walk home. 由于没有公共汽车，我们不得不走着回家。

There being no nobody in the room, we realized that there was no use crying. 屋里没人，我们意识到哭喊是没有用的。

注意：如果句中出现 for 时应用 there to be。

It was too late for there to be any buses. 太晚了，没有公共汽车了。

7.4 用在 It be + *adj.* for... 的结构中，只能接 there to be。如：

It is impossible for there to be any more chance. 不可能再有机会了。

B. 动名词（Gerund）

英语中的动名词是由动词变化而来，它仍一方面保留着动词的某些特征，具有动词的某些变化形式，用以表达名词所不能表达的较为复杂的意念，另一方面动名词在句子的用法及功能与名词类似：在句子中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语。它也可以被副词修饰或者用来支配宾语。它分为一般式和完成式，列表如下：

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

1. 动名词的时态意义：

1.1　一般式：表示与谓语动词表示动作同时发生或在其之后发生。如：

I am thinking of getting a new dictionary.（之后或将来）我正考虑买一本新字典。

She is proud of being beautiful.（同时）她为自己的漂亮而自豪。

I approved of his taking part in the project.（同时或之后）我赞成他参与这个项目。

1.2　完成式：表示动作在谓语动作之前发生。如：

He gives people the impression of having spent all his life abroad. 他给人的印象是他一生都在国外。

He denied having been there. 他否认去过那里。

2. 动名词的被动语态：

动名词的主动语态表示主动行为，被动语态表示被动行为，动作的逻辑主语一般都可在句中找到。

2.1　被动式：当动名词的逻辑主语是动名词动作的对象时，该动名词要求用被动式。如：

I still remember being taken to the zoo for the first time. 我仍然记得第一次去动物园的情景。

He doesn't like being flattered. 他不喜欢被人奉承。

2.2　完成被动式：兼有完成和被动双重特点。如：

I appreciated having been given the opportunity to study abroad two years ago. 我很感激两年前有出国学习的机会。

3. 动名词可充当的句子成分：主语、宾语和表语。

3.1　动名词作主语

① 直接置于句首时谓语动词用单数。如：

Smoking is bad for health. 吸烟有害健康。

Saying is easier than doing. 说着容易做着难。

② 作主语时常用于下列固定句型，it 是形式主语，动名词是句子的真正主语。如：

It's no good/use/point doing 做……没有好处/用处

There is no point/use/sense/harm (in) doing

It's a waste of time doing

It is no use crying over spilt milk. →There is no point in crying over spilt milk. 覆水难收。(对着撒了的牛奶哭泣是没有用的。)

There is no point memorizing the theory without putting it into practice. 只记住理论而不付诸实践是没有意义的。

It's a mere waste of time discussing such questions. 讨论这些问题只不过是浪费时间而已。

3.2　动名词作宾语

① 常接动名词作宾语的动词有：admit 承认，avoid 避免，deny 否认，enjoy 享受，finish 完成，practice 练习，实践，resent 憎恨，anticipate 期望，appreciate 欣赏，suggest/propose 建议，keep 保持、坚持，escape 逃脱、逃离，mind 介意，dislike 不喜欢，resist 坚持，risk 冒险做，involve 包含，包括、涉及，permit 允许，favor 喜欢、赞成，postpone 耽搁，延迟，delay 耽搁，延迟，can't help 禁不住、忍不住，consider 考虑等。如：

We do not permit smoking here. 此处禁止吸烟。

The students anticipate having a good time in Jinan. 学生们期望在济南玩得愉快。

He narrowly escaped being killed in the fire. 他从火灾中死里逃生。

I'm considering going abroad someday. 我一直考虑有一天出国。

② 常接动名词作宾语的动词短语有：can't stand，can't help，feel like 想做，leave off，put off，keep on，give up，object to，contribute to，devote to，look forward to，fall to，resort to，lead to，

add to, conform to, be accustomed to/be used to, be opposed to, be contrary to, attach importance to, in addition to, stick to, thanks to, the way/approach/solution/key to 等。如：

However, others strongly object to developing private cars. 不过，其他人强烈反对发展私家车。

After he has retired, he will devote himself to gardening. 退休后，他将致力于园艺。

He is accustomed to getting up early. 他习惯了早起。

The key to leading a meaningful life is to study every day. 过有意义的生活的关键是每天学习。I don't feel like walking very much today. 我今天不太想散步。

注意：这些短语后跟动名词的条件是在句子中作谓语，否则另当别论。如：

The train I'm looking forward to arrived two minutes ago. 我盼望的那列火车两分钟前到达了。

③ 在复合句中，用 it 作形式宾语，将动名词短语放到后面。如：

I consider it a waste of time arguing about this thing. 我认为辩论这件事是浪费时间。

He thought it absolutely senseless attempting the impossible. 想做不可能做到的事，他认为是完全没有道理的。

④ 下列句型需要使用动名词作宾语：

have difficulty/trouble/problem (in) + doing

have fun/pleasure/a hard time/a good time + (in) doing

spend time/money (in) + doing

waste time (in) + doing

lose time (in) + doing

be busy (in) + doing

Students growing up from nursery school to college have trouble dealing with realities. 从幼儿园到大学的学生在如何应付现实生活上都存在困难。

They had a hard time walking out of the grassland. 他们很艰难地走出了草原。

Don't lose time in doing your homework. 抓紧时间做作业吧。

He is busy preparing for the coming exams. 他正忙着准备即将到来的考试。

⑤ 动词 allow, advise, forbid, permit, recommend 等后可用动名词作宾语，但若有人作间接宾语时，则后面用动词不定式。试比较：

We do not allow smoking in the lecture room. 报告厅里不允许吸烟。

We do not allow people to smoke in the lecture room. 报告厅里不允许吸烟。

I recommend going by subway. 我建议坐地铁去。

The doctor recommended Liming to take a few days' rest. 医生建议李明休息几天。

⑥ 在 need, want, require, deserve, demand, be worth 后面可用动名词或不定式作宾语，但用动名词作宾语时，用主动形式表达被动含义；使用不定式作宾语时，依然用被动形式表达被动含义。试比较：

The book deserves mentioning. = The book deserves to be mentioned. 这本书值得关注。

The child wants looking after. = The child wants to be looked after. 孩子愿意受照顾。

The flower needs watering. = The flower needs to be watered. 这花需要浇水。

⑦ 有些动词后面可以接不定式和动名词，意义有变化：

stop { to do 停下来接着去做另外一件事 / doing 停止正在做的事情 }

go on { to do 接着去做另外一件事 / doing 继续做正在做的事情 }

remember {to do 记着去做某事 / doing 记着已经做过的事情}

forget {to do 忘记去做某事 / doing 忘记已经做过的事情}

regret {to do 遗憾 / doing 后悔做了}

try {to do 努力做 / doing 试着做}

mean {doing 意味着 / to do 打算做}

What upsets Linda is that her husband always forgets to buy her a present on her birthday. 让琳达伤心的是她丈夫总是忘了给她买生日礼物。(没买礼物)

The father forgot buying a present for his little son and bought another.

父亲忘记给小儿子买过礼物了，又买了另一个。(已经买过，忘了。)

I regret having to turn down your proposal. 我很后悔拒绝了你的建议。

I regret to say I can't go with you. 我很遗憾地说我不能跟你一起去。

You don't mean to resign at once, do you? 你不打算立即辞职，是吗?

His silence to my request means refusing. 他对我的请求保持沉默就意味着拒绝。

3.3 动名词作表语

用来表示主语的内容。如:

My hobby is collecting stamps. 我的爱好是集邮。

The only thing that interests her is dancing. 她唯一感兴趣的是跳舞。

Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。

4. 动名词的复合结构

动名词和它的逻辑主语构成了动名词复合结构。动名词的逻辑主语是代词时要用形容词性的物主代词；表示有生命的名词就用名词的所有格。如:

I don't mind your delaying making the decision as long as it is not too late. (物主代词) 我不介意你拖拖拉拉做决定，只要还不是太晚。

Tom's refusing to accept the invitation upsets me. (名词的所有格) 汤姆拒绝接受邀请使我很难过。

My father's falling ill worried mother greatly. 我父亲生病使我母亲非常担心。

I object to his (him) making private calls on the office phone. 我反对他用办公室电话打私人电话。

I don't like their (them) shouting at me. 我不喜欢他们对我大喊大叫。

确定逻辑主语的格的形式时需注意以下几点:

① 动名词复合结构作主语时一般用名词所有格或形容词性物主代词。如:

Nixon's visiting China marked a new era between U. S. and China diplomatic relations. 尼克松访问中国标志着中美外交关系进入一个新的时代。

② 在口语和非正式语体中，只要不是做主语，动名词复合结构中的逻辑主语常采用名词通格或人称代词宾格。如:

The doctor does not mind me/my eating a little meat occasionally. 医生并不反对我偶尔吃一点肉。

③ 如果逻辑主语是一个短语或有修饰语，一般用名词通格或人称代词的宾格形式。如:

The teacher insisted on the boy who threw the eraser apologizing. 老师坚持要那个扔掉橡皮擦的男孩道歉。

I insist on both of them coming in time. 我坚持要他们两人准时来。

Do you remember Mary and her mother coming to see us last year? 你还记得玛丽和她妈妈去年来看望我们的事吗?

④ 生命的事物名词作逻辑主语时一般采用通格形式。如:

The suggestion of the meeting being put off was not adopted by the chairman. 延期召开会议的建议没有被主席采纳。

5. 介词 + 动名词 on/upon doing sth. 刚一做某事(就……)

相当于 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句。如:

On arriving at the village, these college students went to help the farmers with their work. →

As soon as they arrived at the village, these college students went to help the farmers with their work. 一到村庄,这些大学生们就去跟农民们干活。

Upon going out of the room, Jack heard his cellphone ringing. →

As soon as he went out of the room, Jack heard his cellphone ringing. 刚走出房间,杰克就听见他的电话响了。

6. 连词 + 动名词 once doing 一旦做某事

相当于 once 引导的条件状语从句,可以看作是 once 条件状语从句的省略。

Once making a promise, you should try your best to fulfil it. →

Once you have made a promise, you should try your best to fulfil it. 一旦承诺,你就应该尽力兑现承诺。

> 注意:
> 1. 使用 on/upon doing 和 once doing sth. 必须注意,后面句子主语就是前面 doing 动作的发出者。
> 2. 当后面句子主语与 once 后面的动词动作是被动关系时,经常使用过去分词。如:Once bitten, twice shy. 一朝被蛇咬,十年怕井绳。

C. 分词(Participle)

分词是非谓语动词的三种限定形式之一,分为两种:现在分词(-ing 分词)和过去分词(-ed 分词)。

1. 分词的分类和构成形式:

规则动词的现在分词形式是“动词原形 + ing”;规则动词的过去分词形式是“动词原形 + ed”.

分词的否定式在分词前加 not。如:

running water 自来水　　dripping taps 滴着的水龙头

the exploited 被剥削阶级　　fallen leaves 落叶

Not wanting to continue my service in the plant, I joined the army. 我不想继续在那家工厂做事,就入伍了。

2. 与动词不定式一样,分词也具有动词的特征,有时态和语态的变化。现在分词时态和语态的变化:

	主动	被动
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

2.1　一般式说明分词表示的动作和句中谓语动词同时或之后发生。如：

Arriving at the station, he found the train had left. 到达车站时，他发现火车已经离开了。

2.2　完成式 having done 表示分词动作发生在句中谓语动作之前且具有主动意义。如：

Having completed one task, we start on another one. 完成一个任务之后，我们开始另一个。

Not having tried his best, he failed in the exam. 由于没有尽力，他考试不及格。

Having failed twice, he did not want to try again. 已经失败了两次，他不想再试一次。

Having dressed myself, I went to the office. 我穿好衣服，去了办公室。

2.3　完成被动 having been done 表示分词动作发生在句中谓语动作之前且有被动意义。如：

Having been badly damaged by the earthquake, the city had to be rebuilt. 城市被地震严重破坏，需要重建。

Having been written in haste, the essay was not worth reading. 这篇文章写得仓促，不值得一读。

Having been beaten seriously, the enemy retreated. 敌人被打击严重，撤退了。

3. 可充当的句子成分：

分词具有动词的特征，同时又具有形容词和副词的特征，因而它在句中可以作定语、表语、宾语补足语和状语等。

3.1　分词作定语

① 分词作定语时，现在分词与被修饰词之间有主动意义；过去分词与被修饰词之间有被动意义。其作用相当于一个定语从句。如：

A man getting up as soon as the cock crows is a hard-working man. →

A man who is getting up as soon as the cock crows is a hard-working man. 鸡鸣即起的人是勤奋的人。

Those living on a mountain live off the mountain. =

Those who are living on a mountain live off the mountain. 靠山吃山。

Money spent on the brain is never spent in vain. =

Money that/which are spent on the brain is never spent in vain. 智力投资永远也不会徒劳无益。

A word that/which was spoken is an arrow let fly. 说出的话就像射出去的箭，收不回来。

② 分词短语作后置定语时，也有非限定性的，对中心词做进一步附加说明，相当于一个非限定性从句，用逗号与中心词隔开。如：

This book, written in simple English, is suitable for beginners. →

This book, which is written in simple English, is suitable for beginners. 本书使用浅显的英文写的，适合初学者。

This book, dealing with English composition, was written by a professor. →

This book, which deals with English composition, was written by a professor. 这本书讲英语写作，是位教授写的。

All the letters in the drawer, written in pencil, are from my brother. →

All the letters in the drawer, which are written in pencil, are from my brother. →

All the letters in the drawer, which are written in pencil, are from my brother. 抽屉里的信都是我哥哥写来的，这些信是用铅笔写的。

3.2　分词作表语

下列系动词 be, get, become, look, sound, feel, keep, remain, grow, seem, appear 等后常用分词作表语。而作表语用的分词，许多是由能够表示人们某种感情或情绪的动词变化而来的。常见的分词如下：

现在分词：moving，interesting，encouraging，exciting，inspiring，boring，surprising，puzzling，amusing，astonishing，missing，promising。

过去分词：moved，interested，discouraged，amused，astonished，frighten，excited，inspired，pleased，satisfied，tired，worried，completed，delighted，hurt，married，crowded。

① 现在分词作表语：一般表主动或主语的性质和特征。含有“令人……”的意思。主语多数情况下是物。

② 过去分词作表语：一般表被动或主语所处的状态。含有“感到……”的意思。主语多数情况下是人。

The theory sounds quite convincing. 这个理论听起来可信。

This book is interesting. 这本书很有趣。

We are interested in the book. 我们对这本书感兴趣。

The news sounds encouraging. 这个消息听起来令人鼓舞。

They got very excited. 他们非常激动。

Well，his father seems pleased with his results. 不错，他父亲似乎对他的成绩感到高兴。

The door remained locked. 门锁着。

The situation proves encouraging. 形势是令人鼓舞的。

The music is much pleasing to the ear. 音乐优美悦耳。

She seems unthinking. 她看上去漫不经心。

3.3 分词作宾语补足语

分词只能在两类动词后作宾补：感觉、感官动词和使役、致使动词。现在分词表示正在进行的主动意义，过去分词则表示已经完成的被动意义。

① 常用的感觉、感官动词有：see，observe，watch，hear，smell，listen to，look at，feel，find等。如：

She smelt something burning. 她闻到糊味儿。

He heard his name called. 他听（别人）叫他的名字。

I can hear a cat scratching at the window. 我听见猫在窗子上抓挠玻璃的声音。

She felt a great load taken off her mind. 她觉得思想上去掉了一个重担。

I found those students studying very hard. 我发现那些学生学习很刻苦。

She saw the thief caught by policeman. 我看见小偷被警察抓住了。

He noticed a woman in a black dress sitting across from him. 他注意到一个穿着黑色衣服的女人坐在他对面。

② 常用的致使、使役动词有：have，make，get，set，catch，start，leave，keep 等。如：

Many youngsters have their hair colored. 很多年轻人染发。

The boss had Tom running upstairs and downstairs all the time. 老板总是让汤姆楼上楼下跑个不停。

She still could not make herself understood in English. 她仍然不能用英语表达自己的意思。

He managed to get it done on time. 他设法按时完成了任务。

The joke set them all laughing. 这个笑话逗得他们哈哈大笑。

The teacher often caught him dozing off in class. 老师经常发现他在课堂上打瞌睡。

③ 作宾语补足语的分词如果表示正在发生的被动动作，前面要加 being。如：

She saw the wounded man being carried into the hospital. 她看见那个受伤的人正被送往医院。

He found himself being followed by a wolf. 他发现自己被一只狼跟着。

We watch the house being pulled down. 我们看着房子被拆毁。

④ 分词作宾补的特殊情况：

make，set 的用法：

make 后的宾语补语只能用过去分词，不能用现在分词。如：

The teacher raised his voice so that he could make himself heard. 老师提高了嗓门以便别人能听到他说话。

Can you easily make yourself understood in English? 你能用英语轻易地表达你的思想吗？

A statesman can make his influence felt through his speech and action. 政治家可以通过演讲和行动来发挥他的影响力。

He made the driver waiting for him outside. （误）

He had the driver waiting for him outside. （正）

set 后的宾语补足语通常是现在分词，不用过去分词（使行动起来做某事）。如：

Her words set me thinking deeply. 他的话使我陷入深思。

His action set her wondering. 他的行为让她不解。

You can set each group repeating the sentence after you. 你可以让每个小组轮流跟你读这个句子。

3.4 分词作状语

分词作状语时句子的主语也是分词的逻辑主语，一般需要用逗号同其他成分隔开。分词可以作时间、原因、结果、让步、条件、方式和伴随等状语。

① 作时间状语相当于 when 引导的从句，这类状语通常放在句子的前半部分。如：

Hearing the news，they immediately set off for Shanghai. →

When they heard the news，they immediately set off for Shanghai. 一听到这个消息，他们立刻出发去了上海。

Seen from the pagoda，the south foot of the Purple Mountain is a sea of trees. 从宝塔望去，紫金山南麓是一片森林之海。

Coming awake in the dark，I found myself lying in a strange house. 我在黑暗中醒来，发现自己躺在一所陌生的房子里。

注意：若两个动作同时发生，可在分词前用 when 或 while 表示强调。如：

When leaving the airport，they waved again and again to us. 离开机场时，他们向我们频频挥手致意。

② 作原因状语相当于 as，since，because 引导的从句。这类状语多放在句子的前半部分。如：

Overcome with surprise，she was unable to utter a word. 她惊讶得说不出话来。

Being Sunday，the shops are overcrowded. →As it was Sunday，the shops are overcrowded. 因为星期日，商店人满为患。

Done in a hurry，his homework was full of mistakes. 做得很匆忙，他的家庭作业错误百出。

Given advice by the famous detective，the young lady was no longer afraid. 在那位著名侦探的建议下，这位年轻女士不再害怕了。

The doctor，not wanting to make the patient nervous，did not explain the seriousness of his illness. 医生不想使病人紧张，他没有解释病情的严重性。

③ 作结果状语相当于 so... that 引导的从句，这类状语通常放在句子的后半部分。

He is always worrying about trifles，losing sight of his main objectives. 他总是担心琐事，失去了人生的主要目标。

He turned off the lamp，（thereby） seeing nothing. 他把灯关了，所以什么也没看见。

A number of new machines were introduced from abroad，（thus） resulting in an increase in produc-

tion. 从国外引进了很多新机器，因此产量增加了。

④ 作让步状语相当于 though，even if 等引导的从句。如：

Admitting what she has said，I still think that she hasn't tried her best. →

Although I admit what she has said，I still think that she hasn't tried her best. 我承认她说了些什么，但我仍然认为她没有尽最大努力。

Wounded，the brave soldier continued to fight. 尽管受伤了，勇敢的战士仍然继续战斗。

⑤ 作条件状语相当于 if，unless 等引导的从句。如：

常见的引导条件状语的分词有：given，supposing（suppose），considering，provided，assuming 等。如：

Given another chance，I'll do it much better. = If I am given another chance，I'll do it much better. 如果再给我一次机会，我会做得更好。

Supposing he is out，what shall we do? 假如他不在，我们怎么办？

Considering the strength of the opponents，we did very well to score two goals. 考虑到对手的实力，我们能进两个球就很好了。

I will lend the money to you provided that you return it next month. 如果你下个月还我，我就把钱借给你。

Assuming that you get a place at university，how are you going to finance your studies? 假设你在大学里找到了一个地方，你打算怎样支付你的学费？

Turning to the right，you will find a path leading to his cottage. →

If you turn to the right，you will find a path leading to his cottage. 向右边走，你会找到一条通向他的小屋的一条小路。

⑥ 作方式或伴随情况状语时不能用状语从句替换，但可以写成并列句。如：

He walked down the hill，singing softly to himself. →

He walked down the hill and sing softly to himself. 他走下山去，轻轻地唱着歌。

He hurried to the hall，followed by two guards. →

He hurried to the hall and was followed by two guards. 他匆忙赶到大厅，后面跟着两个卫兵。

She stood at the window watching the sunset. 她站在窗前看日落。

Love is a beautiful song，bringing us wild joy and happiness. 爱是一首美丽的歌，带给我们欢乐和幸福。

He lay on the river bank，feeling the warmth of the sun against his face. 他躺在河岸上，感受到温暖的太阳照射在他的脸上。

The deer silently crossed the fields，half hidden in the mists of the fall mornings. 小鹿静静地走过田野，隐没在秋日清晨的薄雾中。

⑦ 分词短语作状语时，有时前面可用一个连词表示强调，或表达需要。常用的连词有：when，while，after，before，if，though，whether... or，unless，as if 等。如：

When compared with the size of the whole earth，the highest mountain in the world is not high. →

When it is compared with the size of the whole earth，the highest mountain in the world is not high. 与整个地球的大小相比，世界上最高的山也就并不高了。

After taking the medicine，she felt better. = After she took the medicine，she felt better. 吃了药后，她感觉好些了。

Whether sleeping or walking，he always thinks of her. 无论是睡觉还是走路，他总是想起她。

Although born a girl，she was treated as a boy. 尽管她是个女孩，但被当作男孩对待。

The river is flowing peacefully, as if murmuring a never-ending story. 河水静静地流淌着，仿佛在诉说一个永不停息的故事。

The man will die unless operated on at once. 除非马上动手术，否则他会死的。

如果这些连词后的分词是 being 或含有 being，则 being 常常省略。如：

When (being) alone, she will think of the past. 当她独自一个人时，她会想起过去。

Though (being) a wealthy man, John is always plain-dressed. 约翰虽然是个有钱人，但总是衣着朴素。

As if (being) frightened, the horses began to run like mad. 马好像受惊了，跑得像疯了似的。

注意：一般情况下，作状语的分词的逻辑主语就是句子的主语。

1. Turning around, an old woman was seen walking towards the river. (误)

Turning around, we saw an old woman walking towards the river. (正)

转过身，我们看见一位老妇人朝河边走去。

在第一句中，分词短语 turning around 的逻辑主语显然不是句子的主语，即 turning around 这个动作根据句意不可能是 an old wo man 发出的，因此用法不当。再比较：

2. Seen from the hilltop, he was delighted to see a wonderland. (误)

Seen from the hilltop, the valley looked like a wonderland. (正)

从山顶上看，山谷像一个仙境。

3. When using this machine, the instructions must be read first. (误)

When using this machine, you/we must read the instructions first. (正)

在使用这台机器时，你/我们必须先阅读说明书。

4. 分词的独立结构

分词作状语时，其逻辑主语与句子的主语应该一致，否则，分词应有自己的逻辑主语，构成分词的独立结构，也叫独立主格。作状语时可以表示时间、原因、条件、方式或伴随等。

4.1 逻辑主语 + 现在分词，表示主动意义。如：

Weather/Time permitting, we shall go there on foot. (表条件， = If weather/time permits, we shall go there on foot.) 如果天气/时间允许，我们步行去那里。

Mary coming back, they discussed it together. (表时间， = When Mary come back,) 玛丽来了的时候，他们一起讨论。

Nobody having any more to say, the meeting was closed. (表原因， = Since nobody had any more to say, the meeting was closed.) 没有人再发言了，会议结束。

She walked along the path, her daughter following close behind. (表伴随情况， = ... and her daughter followed close behind.) 她沿着小路走，女儿紧跟在她的后面。

Alice looked up at her father, tears pouring down her face. 爱丽丝抬头看着她的父亲，眼泪顺着脸流下来。

John being away, she became a bit frightened. 约翰不在，她开始有些害怕。

The heavy frost coming on, dead leaves lay thick on the ground. 枯叶落尽，白霜将至。

4.2 逻辑主语 + 过去分词，表示被动意义。如：

This done, they went home. (表时间， = When this was done...) 事情做完了，他们回家了。

Everything/All taken into consideration, his plan seems to be more workable.

(表条件， = If everything/all is considered...) 所有事情考虑在内，他的计划似乎更可行。

Good luck given, I will earn more money than all of you.

(表条件，=If good luck is given... =Given good luck...) 给我好运气，我会比你们所有人挣的钱都多。

4.3 逻辑主语+分词的完成式或分词的完成被动式，这种结构表示先完成动作的主动意义或先完成动作的被动意义。如：

The moon having risen, they took a walk in the fields. (表时间，=When the moon had risen...) 月亮升起来了，他们在田野里散步。

The earthquake having destroyed everything, they became homeless.

(表原因，=Because the earthquake had destroyed everything...) 地震摧毁了一切，他们无家可归。

So much money having been wasted, he will be punished.

(表原因，=Because so much money has been wasted...) 这么多钱被浪费了，他会受到惩罚的。

All flights having been cancelled because of the snowstorm, we decided to take the train. 由于暴风雪，所有航班都取消了，我们决定乘坐火车。

The plan having been made, what is important is to put it into practice. 计划已经制定了，重要的是付诸实施。

4.4 with/without+逻辑主语+分词，独立结构中的逻辑主语前有时可以加 with 或 without（多数情况下，with 能省略，without 不能省），作伴随状语。比较：

with/without+逻辑主语+现在分词→主动意义（正在进行或发生）

with/without+逻辑主语+过去分词→被动意义（已经完成）

With night coming on, they went home. 夜幕降临，他们回家了。

We sat in the courtyard, with the moon rising above the treetops. 我们坐在院子里，月亮升上树梢。

Without a word more spoken, she left the room. 她一句话也没说，就离开了房间。

She started on the journey without anyone accompanying her. 她开始旅行，没有人陪伴她。

注意：有时候，不同的独立结构可以表示同一个意思。如：

1. With Peter away,
Peter being away,
Peter away,
} there's more room in the house.

彼得走了，房子里还有更多的地方。

2. With the matter settled,
The matter being settled,
The matter settled,
} he felt quite satisfied with the results.

事情解决了，他对结果感到很满意。

4.5 分词充当状语时，分词的逻辑主语和主句的主语一致，即为“分词作状语”。

分词充当状语时，分词的逻辑主语和主句的主语不一致，即为“独立主格”。

分词（短语）有意义上的逻辑主语，它或是句子的主语，或者另有自己的主语，不然称这种分词为“悬垂分词”，用来表示说话人的一种态度，看问题的角度，或者对所叙述的情况进行解释。这种分词（通常是现在分词）已被看成是一种固定词组，可以看作是一种句子的独立成分。如：

Strictly speaking, nobody is allowed in here. 严格地讲，谁也不允许在这儿。(speaking 的逻辑主语并不是 nobody)

Judging from his accent，he must be from the South. 从他的口音判断，他一定是南方人。(这句中不是 he 在“判断”)

Taken as a whole，there is nothing with the book. 总的来说，这本书没有问题。

Taking all things into consideration，his work is a successful one. 全面考虑起来，他的工作还是很成功的。

经常这样用的分词（分词词组）有：

allowing for... 考虑到……；frankly（broadly，generally，properly，strictly...）speaking，坦白地说（从广义上，一般地，适当地，严格地）说；judging from（by）...，根据……判断；taking... into consideration 把……考虑在内

5. there being 结构

5.1　可以作主语。如：

There being a bus stop so near the house is a great advantage. 在离房子很近的地方有一个公共汽车站是个很大的好处。

5.2　可以作状语。如：

We left the meeting，there obviously being no point in staying. 没有必要留下来，我们离开了会议。

They closed the store，there being nobody around. 周围没有人了，他们关闭了商店。

5.3　可以作介词宾语。例如：

John was relying on there being another opportunity. 约翰靠的是另一个机会。

I never dreamed of there being a picture on the wall. 我做梦也没想到墙上有幅画。

非谓语动词的用法比较

名称	语法功能					
	主语	宾语	宾语补足语	表语	定语	状语
不定式	√	√	√	√	√	√
动名词	√	√		√	√	
现在分词		√	√	√	√	
过去分词		√	√	√	√	

1. 不定式与动名词作主语、表语的比较

不定式与动名词作主语一般来说差别不大，有时两者可以互换。但按传统语法来说，动名词表示说话人的习惯、爱好或是抽象动作；而动词不定式表示具体的、一次性动作。如：

Smoking is prohibited here. 此处禁止吸烟。

It's not very good for you to smoke so much. 你抽那么多烟不太好。

A postman's duty is delivering mails. 邮递员的职责是投递邮件。

Your task this morning is to deliver the papers to Professor Smith. 你今天上午的任务是把这些论文送给史密斯教授。

2. 动名词作宾语与不定式作宾语的比较

① 在动词 start，begin，continue，cease 等后面，通常情况下不定式和动名词作宾语区别不大。如：

They start talking/to talk about the matter. 他们开始谈论那件事了。

She never ceased complaining/to complain about the prices. 她从未停止对物价的抱怨。

但是，在有些情况下，begin 和 start 后面只能接不定式。如：谓语动词为进行式时；主语为物

时，后接 understand 或 feel 等表示感觉或精神活动的动词时。如：

I'm beginning to feel better. 我渐渐觉得好些了。

He started to understand the situation. 他开始了解情况了。

The snow began to melt. 雪开始融化了。

如果表示长期性、习惯性行为的开始，则多用动名词。如：

How old were you when you began practicing the piano? 你几岁开始学钢琴?

② 在动词 like，love，hate，prefer 等后面，动名词表示抽象、习惯性的动作，不定式表示具体的、一次性的动作。如：

I prefer/like/love taking a walk after supper. 我喜欢晚饭后散步。

It is very hot today. I like/love/prefer to swim after dinner. 今天很热，我想饭后去游泳。

但是，如果在 like，love，hate，prefer 前有 would，should 时，其后只能跟不定式。如：

I'd like to take part in the match. 我想参加这场比赛。

I should prefer to stay here. 我宁愿留在这儿。

3. 感官动词后分词宾补和不定式宾补的区别

这类动词后可以用分词作宾补，也可以用不定式作宾补，其区别是：

分词宾补表示动作正在进行，尚未完成，不是全过程；不定式宾补表示动作的完成，是全过程。另外，短暂性动作的分词作宾补表示动作的反复，而不定式表示动作的一次性。试比较：

① She woke and heard the wolf howling. (The wolf was howling.) 她醒来时听见狼在嚎叫。

She was overjoyed to hear you say that. (You said that.) 听到你这么说，她喜出望外。

② I saw a soldier getting on the train. 我看见一个战士上了火车。

I saw a soldier get on the train and disappeared. 我看见一个战士上了火车就不见了。

③ Do you hear the door bell ringing? 你听到门铃响吗?

Yes, I did. I heard it ring three times. 是的，我听到了，我听到它响了三次。

④ She heard the door slamming. (反复的动作) 她听到门砰的一声关上了。

She heard the door slam. (一次性动作，已完成) 她听到门砰的一声关上了。

注意：有时这两种结构作宾补意义上没有什么差别。如：

She noticed him leaving/leave the hall. 她注意到他离开了大厅。

4. 动名词作表语与现在分词作表语的比较

动名词作表语表示主语的内容，现在分词作表语表示主语的特征或属性。如：

The only thing that interests him is dancing. 他唯一感兴趣的就是跳舞。(动名词表示内容)

The book is very interesting. 这本书很有趣。(现在分词表示特征)

5. 作表语的现在分词和构成进行时态的现在分词的比较

作表语的现在分词表示主语所处的状态或特征，构成进行时态的现在分词表示主语正在进行的动作。试比较：

The present situation is encouraging. 当前的形势令人鼓舞。(分词作表语)

The present situation is encouraging us to continue our experiment. 当前的形势正在鼓舞我们继续进行实验。(分词构成进行时)

6. 作表语的过去分词和构成被动语态的过去分词的比较

作表语的过去分词表示主语所处的状态或特征，构成被动语态的过去分词表示主语是动作的承受者，强调的是动作。试比较：

The cup was broken. 杯子破了。(分词作表语)

The cup was broken by John. 杯子是约翰打破的。(分词构成被动语态)

7. 不定式作宾补与分词作宾补的比较

动词 see，hear，feel，notice，watch，observe 等既可跟动词不定式也可跟现在分词作宾补。它们之间的区别在于：不定式则着重说明动作的全过程；现在分词着重说明动作正在发生。试比较：

I saw him cross the street. （省 to 的不定式）我看到他穿过马路。

I saw a plane flying to the north. （=A plane was seen flying to the north.）我看到一架飞机正朝北方飞去。

I watched her go out of the room. 我看到她走出房间。（强调的是过程）

I watched her going out of the room. 我看到她正走出房间。（强调的是正在进行的动作）

8. 不定式与分词作定语的比较

不定式与分词都可作定语：不定式作定语表示将来进行的动作；现在分词作定语指正在进行的动作；过去分词作定语指过去进行的动作。即：to be done 表示将来的动作；being done 表示正在进行的动作；done 表示过去或已经完成的动作。如：

The question to be discussed is of great importance. 即将讨论的问题非常重要。

The question being discussed is of great importance. 正在讨论的问题非常重要。

The question discussed is of great importance. 讨论过的那个问题非常重要。

9. 不定式和分词作状语的区别

9.1 现在分词与过去分词作状语的区别

现在分词做状语与过去分词做状语的动作就是句子主语的动作，它们之间的关系是主动关系；过去分词作状语时，过去分词表示的动作是句子主语承受的动作，它们之间的关系是被动关系。如：

He went out shutting the door behind him. 他出去后将门随手关上。（主动）

Not knowing what to do，he went to his parents for help. 由于不知怎么办，他去找父母帮忙。（主动）

Given more attention，the trees could have grown better. 如果对这些树多关心一些，它们本来会长得更好。（被动）

Faced with difficulties，we must try to overcome them. 在遇到困难的时候，我们必须设法克服。（被动）

9.2 动词不定式和分词作状语的区别

① 分词作状语一般表示伴随，而不定式常常表示目的。

They stood by the roadside talking about the plan. 他们站在路边谈论着这个计划。（伴随）

They stood by the roadside to talk about the plan. 他们站在路边为的是谈论这个计划。（目的）

② 分词作状语放在句子开头，除表示原因之外有时表示时间或条件。动词不定式作状语时，除了表示目的以外，还表示结果或原因。

Reading attentively，he forgot the time for lunch. 由于在专心读书，他忘了吃午饭的时间。（原因）

Reading carefully，he found something he had not known before. 他认真读书时，发现了一些从前不知道的东西。（时间）

Reading carefully，you'll learn something new. 只要你仔细阅读，你会学到一些新的东西。（条件）

His family was too poor to support him. 他的家庭太穷，不能维持他的生活。（结果）

The boy is not tall enough to reach the book shelf. 这男孩个子不够高，手够不到书架。（结果）

We are glad to hear the news. 我们很高兴听到这个消息。（原因）

Grammar Test 1

1. The teacher stepped into the classroom and ________ the students to open the windows at once.
   A. to ask　B. asking　C. asked　D. has asked
2. Where shall I put my boxes? The drawer is the place ________.
   A. to put them　B. putting them in　C. to put in them　D. to put them in
3. According to a recent U. S. survey, children spend up to 25 hours a week ________ TV.
   A. to watch　B. watching　C. to watching　D. watch
4. Though small, the room is comfortable ________.
   A. to live　B. to live in　C. living in　D. live in
5. The girl walked quietly into the room ________ awake her roommates.
   A. so as to　B. in order not to　C. so as to not　D. for to not
6. We were surprised at ________ the exam.
   A. him not pass　B. his passing not　C. his not passing　D. him not to pass
7. ________ one's work properly may not be worse than not doing it at all.
   A. Not to do　B. Doing not　C. Doing　D. Not doing
8. He prided himself on ________ at chess.
   A. having never beaten　B. having been never beaten
   C. having never been beaten　D. never have been beaten
9. It is important ________ a beginner ________ the correct pronunciation of a foreign language when he studies it.
   A. of; to teach　B. for; to be taught　C. of; to be taught　D. for; to have taught
10. Jane was scolded by the director because she left office with the door ________.
   A. unlocking　B. not being locked　C. unlocked　D. not locking
11. Obviously, the elephant ought ________ hours ago by the keepers.
   A. to be fed　B. to feed　C. to being fed　D. to have been fed
12. ________ in ancient times, the book still appeals to readers today.
   A. Though it written　B. Though written
   C. It was written　D. Written it was
13. After a whole day's heavy work, the old worker returned home, ________.
   A. hungry and felt exhausting　B. hunger and exhausted
   B. hungry and exhausted　D. hungry and having been exhausted
14. The old writer could not sleep at night, his wrongs and sorrows ________ him no peace.
   A. gave　B. have give　C. being give　D. giving
15. Television has become a major instrument of communication, ________ us to see as well as to hear all kinds of programs.
   A. to permit　B. permitted　C. being permitting　D. permitting
16. The author gave a detailed description ________ on his personal observation of nature.
   A. to base　B. to be based　C. based　D. basing
17. Some people are sitting on the grass, and others are strolling along the lake side, ________.
   A. chatting and to laugh　B. to chat and to laugh
   C. chatting and laughing　D. chatting and laughed
18. I was overjoyed at the news of my hometown ________ so much progress.

A. to make　B. to have made　C. made　D. having made

19. The way ________ English is practicing ________ it as often as possible.

A. learning; speaking　B. to learn; to speak

C. to learn; speaking　D. learning; to speak

20. That the brain, once ________ oxygen, dies has been proved.

A. depriving of　B. deprived　C. being deprived　D. deprived of

21. She pretended ________ me when I passed? by.

A. not to see　B. not seeing　C. to not see　D. having not seen

22. —Have you decided when ________ ?

—Yes, tomorrow morning.

A. to leave　B. to be leaving　C. will you leave　D. are you leaving

23. Last summer I took a course on ________ .

A. how to make dresses　B. how to be made dressed

C. how dresses be made　D. how dresses to be made

24. John was made ________ the truck for a week as a punishment.

A. washing　B. to wash　C. wash　D. to be washing

25. ________ made her mother angry.

A. Helen's married Jack　B. Helen's marrying Jack

C. Helen's has married Jack　D. Helen's marrying with Jack

26. She went on ________ until her webbed feet were badly worn.

A. to practicing running　B. practicing to run

C. practicing running　D. to practice to run

27. I tapped the top of my desk, ________ an easy way out of his matter.

A. hoping for　B. hoping to　C. hoped for　D. to hope for

28. ________ all the time is a hard work and it can stop you from communicating well.

A. Trying to be correct　B. Try to be correct

C. That try to be correct　D. To try to be correct

29. On the front page was a large F with a note ________, "See me after class."

A. reading　B. that read　C. reads　D. to read

30. The door of the shop remained ________, though it was ten o'clock a. m.

A. opened　B. opening　C. locked　D. locking

Keys:

1—5 C D B B B　6—10 C D C B C　11—15 D B C D D　16—20 C C D C D

21—25 A A A B B　26—30 C A A A C

Grammar Test 2

1. The Red Cross ________ help for refugees, over two million dollars have been raised.

A. appeals for　B. appeals to

C. has been appealing for　D. appealing for

2. ________, she ran out of the room.

A. Having tears in her eyes and turned suddenly

B. Turning suddenly, with tears in her eyes

C. With sudden turn tearful eyes

D. With tears in her eyes and a sudden turn

3. It's no use our ________ any longer. He may come by any train. He is used to finding his way around.

A. to wait　B. waiting　C. to have waited　D. having waited

4. The revolutionary fighter would rather die with his head high than ________ with his knees bent.

A. to live　B. living　C. live　D. lived

5. I forget ________ her that my coat buttons need to be sewn on.

A. reminding　B. having reminded　C. to remind　D. to have reminded

6. It's no good ________ remember grammatical rules. You need to practice what you have learned.

A. trying to　B. to try to　C. try to　D. tried to

7. I feel like ________ to the owner of the house to complain.

A. writing　B. to write　C. write　D. having written

8. As we approached the village, we saw many new houses ________.

A. built　B. build　C. being built　D. building

9. Tim cannot but ________ his supervisor to help him solve the difficulty he has in doing his project.

A. to ask　B. ask　C. asking　D. asked

10. Would you mind ________ quiet for a moment I am trying ________ a form.

A. keeping; filling out　B. to keep; to fill out

C. keeping; to fill out　D. to keep; filling out

11. I don't remember ________ to Professor Brown during my last visit to Harvard.

A. having introduced　B. having been introduced

C. to have introduced　D. to have been introduced

12. Your hair wants ________. You'd better have it ________ tomorrow.

A. cutting; done　B. cutting; to be done　C. being cut; done　D. to be cut; to be done

13. We ________ to meet at the gate at 7:00.

A. suppose　B. supposed　C. are supposed　D. are supposing

14. She was so angry that she felt like ________ something at him.

A. to throw　B. throwing　C. to have thrown　D. having thrown

15. The bad man at last admitted ________ stolen goods but denied ________ them.

A. to receive; to sell　B. receiving; selling

C. to receiving; to selling　D. receiving; to sell

16. People appreciate ________ with him because he has a good sense of humor.

A. to work　B. to have worked　C. working　D. having worked

17. The speech which he made ________ the project has bothered me greatly.

A. being concerned　B. concerned　C. be concerned　D. concerning

18. ________ seeing the damage he had done, the child felt ashamed.

A. By　B. On　C. At　D. For

19. No one had told Smith about ________ a lecture the following day.

A. there being　B. there would be　C. there be　D. there was

20. They are going to find a new approach ________ these complex problems.

A. to solving　B. to solve　C. in solving　D. that solves

21. ________ of danger in the street at night, she had to go home, with a friend ________ her.

A. Warning; following B. Having warned; following
C. Having been warned; following D. Warned; followed

22. Michael never dreamt of ________ for him to be sent abroad very soon.
A. being a chance B. there's a chance
C. there to be a chance D. there being a chance

23. Which do you enjoy ________ your holiday, going abroad or staying at home?
A. spending B. to spend C. being spent D. spend

24. This problem is far from ________, so it has to be discussed again at tomorrow's meeting.
A. settled B. settling C. being settled D. being settling

25. David apologized for ________ to inform me of the change in the plan.
A. his being not able B. him not to be able
C. his not being able D. him to he not able

26. At the seventh International Ballet Competitions, Fernando Bujones won the first gold medal ever ________ to an American male dancer.
A. awarded B. to be award C. being awarded D. should be awarding

27. The student, if well ________, will pass the examination without much difficulty.
A. preparing B. prepared C. to prepare D. ready

28. Tom does speak Chinese well, but his reading and writing skills leave much ________.
A. to improve B. to be improved C. improving D. improved

29. To get an education, ________.
A. working hard is very important B. working hard is needed
C. one must work hard D. it is needed to work hard

30. Sometimes new idea have to be tested many times before ________.
A. being fully accepted B. accepted fully
C. fully been accepted D. fully accepting

Keys:
1—5 D D B C C 6—10 A A C B C 11—15 B A C B B 16—20 C D B A A
21—25 C D B C C 26—30 A B B C A

Grammar Test 3

1. The guide dog is really the blind man's ________ eyes.
A. seeing B. seen C. saw D. to see

2. Some languages learners find ________ difficult to succeed in other fields of science.
A. that B. so C. it D. them

3. Scientists could see many things that most people ________ to see.
A. fail B. would fail C. fails D. will fail

4. His father forbids ________ at home.
A. him smoke B. him to smoke C. him smoking D. that he smokes

5. She felt it an honor to ________ part in the activity.
A. be taken B. have been taken
C. have taken D. having taken

6. The decision ________, the next problem was how to make a good plan.

A. having been made B. being made
C. having made D. having been making

7. ________ such a good chance, how could she let it slip away?
A. Having given B. Giving
C. Having been given D. Give

8. He reached the station ________, only ________ that the train had just left.
A. exhausted; learned B. exhausting; learning
C. to exhaust; to learn D. exhausted; to learn

9. Everybody expected to be served at once and would feel annoyed ________.
A. to be asked to wait B. to be asked waiting
C. asking to wait D. asking to be waited

10. It is wrong for someone in such a high position in the government ________ so badly in public.
A. behaves B. to behaving C. to behave D. behaved

11. ________ with the size of the whole earth the highest mountain does not seem high at all.
A. When compared B. Compare
C. While competing D. Comparing

12. The pressure ________ causes Americans to be energetic, but it also puts them under a constant emotional strain.
A. to compete B. competing C. to be compete D. having competed

13. ________, I'm not in favor of your plan.
A. Telling you the truth B. For telling you the truth
C. To tell you the truth D. Tell you the truth

14. ________, a man who expresses himself effectively is sure to succeed more rapidly than a man whose command of language is poor.
A. Other things being equal B. Were other things equal
C. To be equal to other things D. Other things to be equal

15. Sometimes children have trouble ________ fact from fiction and may believe that such things actually exist.
A. of separating B. separating
C. for separating D. to separate

16. Everyone had an application form in his hand, but no one knew which office room ________.
A. to be sent to B. to send it to
C. to have it sent D. to send it

17. I have a composition ________ this afternoon, and I won't have time to have my hair ________.
A. written; cut B. written; to cut
C. to write; to cut D. to write; cut

18. The school administration is opposed to ________ the academic years.
A. shorten B. short
C. shorten of D. the shortening of

19. When the host called a close to the party, I noticed that James bitterly resented ________ without any reason.
A. dismissed B. being dismissed C. dismissing D. to dismiss

20. ________ the boss for a raise didn't do any good, so I am thinking of a shift to another company.
A. Ask B. Asked C. My asking D. I asking

21. Does Betty object to ________ every night? Actually it is quite safe in this neighborhood.
A. your escorting her B. that you escort her
C. escort her D. be escorted by you

22. He ________ alone without any companion ever since the last year.
A. use to travel B. has been used to traveling
C. used to travel D. was used to travel

23. Alfred said that he wouldn't mind ________ to go together to the art exhibition.
A. to wait for us B. wait for us
C. waiting for us D. for waiting us

24. Professor Black had us ________ compositions every Friday and submit them by Monday.
A. to write B. written C. write D. wrote

25. I remembered ________ for the job, but I forget the exact amount.
A. to be paid B. that I receive play C. get paid D. being paid

26. ________ from space, our earth, with water covering 70% of its surface, appears as a "blue planet".
A. Seen B. Seeing C. Having seen D. To see

27. ________ a teacher in a university, it is necessary to have at least a master's degree.
A. To become B. Become C. One becomes D. On become

28. If we don't start now, we must risk ________ the train to Edinburgh.
A. to miss B. to have missed
C. missing D. having missed

29. The soldier rushed into the cave, his right hand ________ a gun and his face ________ with sweat.
A. held; covered B. holding; covering C. holding; covered D. held; covering

30. The famous actor is reported ________ in a car accident two weeks ago.
A. to have injured B. having been injured
C. to be injured D. to have been injured

Keys:
1—5 A C B B C 6—10 A C D A C 11—15 A A C A B 16—20 B D D B C
21—25 A B C C D 26—30 A A C C D

第六节 情态动词

1. 情态动词的特点

1.1 情态动词本身有一定的词义，表示可能、允许、能力、必要、禁止、建议、猜测等意义。在句子中不能独立作谓语，后跟动词原形。常用情态动词有：can, may, must, need, shall, will, ought to, used to, dare 等。

1.2 大多数情态助动词有现在时（表示现在和将来）和过去时（表示过去和语气较委婉的现在时）两种形式。

may—might，can—could，will—would，shall—should，dare—dared

1.3 情态动词的否定形式：

情态动词 + not + 动词原形。如：

cannot = can't，must not = mustn't，need not = needn't，should not = shouldn't，ought not to，used not to，dare not

2. 情态动词 + 完成时

情态动词 + 完成时	意　义
could have done couldn't have done	过去可以做但没有做的事情，意思为“完全可以……” 对过去情况的否定推测，意思为“一定没……”
may/might have done	对已经发生情况的不肯定推测，意思为“也许……”
must have done	对过去情况的肯定推测，意思为“一定……”
needn't have done	其实没有必要，意思为“不必……”
should（ought to）have done shouldn't（ought not to）have done	本应该做……（而没有做的事情） 本不应该做……（而做了的事情）

2.1 could have done 表示过去可以做但没有做的事情，意思为“完全可以……”。如：

What you said is right，but you could have phrased it more actually. 你说的是对的，但你可以表达地更巧妙一些。

Nobody could have foreseen all this. 没有人能预见到这一切。

couldn't have done 或 can't have done

表示对过去情况否定的比较有把握的推测，意思为“一定没……”。如：

He couldn't have gone to Beijing. I saw him only a few minutes ago. 他肯定没去北京，我几分钟前见过他。

2.2 might have done 表示对已经发生情况的不肯定推测，意思为“也许……”。如：

They may/might have derived inspiration from these words. 他们可能从这些文字中获得了灵感。

Mary might have learned some Chinese before. 玛丽以前可能学过一些中文。

You didn't do the work well that day. You might have done it better. 那天你的工作做得不好，你本来可以做得更好。

2.3 must have done 表示对过去情况的肯定推测。如：

You look so sleepy. You must have stayed up late last night. 你看起来很困，昨晚一定熬夜了。

Liu Dong isn't in the classroom. He must have gone to the library. 刘东不在教室里，他一定是去图书馆了。

2.4 needn't have done 或 didn't have to 其实没有必要，意思为“不必……”。如：

You needn't have bought that dictionary. I have a spare one. 你本来不必买那本词典的，我还有一本。

You needn't have walked up；you could have taken the lift. 你不必走着上来（爬楼梯），你本来可以乘电梯。

As it turned out to be a small house party，we needn't have dressed up so formally. 这本是一个小型的家庭聚会，我们不必如此正式地装扮。

We needn't have waited for her because she never came. 我们不需要等她，因为她从来没有来过。

2.5 should（ought to）have done 本应该做……（而没有做的事情）

I regret having left the work unfinished. I should have planned everything ahead carefully. 我后悔没有

完成工作，我应该事先计划好一切。

You should have told him the paint on that seat is wet. 你应该告诉他椅子上的油漆还没干。

shouldn't have done 或 ought not to have done 本不应该做……（而做了的事情）

She shouldn't have let the baby play with the scissors. 她不该让孩子玩剪刀。

You shouldn't have waited for us. 你不该等我们的。

3. may/might as well do 意思为“不妨，最好，不如”。如：

Catherine，you may as well come too. 凯瑟琳，你不妨也去。

We may as well stay here for another day. 我们不妨在这里再待一天。

有时可用 might 代替 may，语气更委婉。如：

Since it's a fine day，we might as well walk. 既然天气很好，我们不妨走着去。

There's nothing to do，so I might as well go to bed. 既然没什么事可做，我还是去睡觉好了。

注意：might as well 还可用于指过去的情况或用于比较令人不愉快的情况。如：

This holiday isn't much fun；we might as well be back home. 这个假日过得真没意思，我们还不如待在家里。

4. can't/cannot（never）**. . . too. . . 意思为“再……也不过分，越……越好”。如：**

You cannot be too careful when you drive a car. 你开车时再小心也不为过。

You can never be too careful in the street. 在街上，你越小心越好。

We cannot be too careful in doing experiments. 我们做实验时越仔细越好。

I cannot thank you too much. 我无论怎么感谢你也不过分。

5. dare 既是情态动词又是实义动词。

5.1 dare 是情态动词。如：

How dare you interrupt me? 你怎么敢打断我？

He dare not tell the truth. 他不敢说实话。

She dare not say what she thinks. 她不敢说出自己的想法。

5.2 dare 是实义动词。如：

Nothing is hard in this world if you dare（to）scale the heights. 世上无难事，只要肯攀登。

I don't know whether he dare to try. 我不知道他敢不敢尝试。

He doesn't dare to come out at night. 他晚上不敢出来。

6. need 既是情态动词又是实义动词。

6.1 need 是情态动词，意思为“需要”，既没有人称和数的变化，也没有各种时态形式变化。如：

We need your help. 我们需要你的帮助。

I need to get away and rest up a little. 我需要离开稍稍休息一下。

6.2 need 是实义动词，意思为“需要”，它的用法跟其他动词一样：第三人称单数作主语时加 s，疑问句和否定句用 do 来构成。作实义动词时，need 一般接带 to 的不定式。

① 主语是人，常用结构为：need to do sth，need to be done by sb.

A：He needs to see a doctor. Do you need to see one too? 他要去看医生。你要去吗？

B：No，I don't need to see a doctor. But I need a good rest. 不，我不需要看医生。但我要好好休息一下。

② 主语是事物，常用结构为：need doing sth.（用主动表被动）；need to be done。如：

The flowers need watering every day→.

The flowers need to be watered every day. 花需要每天（被）浇水。

The classroom needs cleaning. →

The classroom needs to be cleaned. 教室需要（被）打扫。

Grammar Test

1. They hurried there only to find the meeting cancelled. In fact, they ________ at all.

A. might not have gone B. must have gone
C. ought to go D. needn't have gone

2. There ________ be an open window somewhere; I can feel cold air coming in.

A. could B. should C. must D. ought

3. As it turned out to be a small driving test, we ________ so hard.

A. needn't prepare B. did not need have prepared
C. did not need prepare D. needn't have prepared

4. It was kind of you to offer me financial help, but you ________ it.

A. mustn't do B. wouldn't have done
C. mustn't have done D. didn't have to do

5. According to the Western culture, one ________ ask his acquaintance such personal questions as his age, income or marital status.

A. needn't B. don't have to C. mustn't D. have not got to

6. Jane doesn't have time to go to the concert; she ________ for her final examination.

A. being prepare B. must be preparing
C. might have been preparing D. is to be prepare

7. My disappointment ________ apparent the moment I entered the office, because some of my colleagues asked me sympathetically: "Are you all right with the boss's decision?"

A. must be B. had been C. must have been D. had to be

8. The ground is wet. It ________ last night.

A. should have rained B. would have rained
C. must have rained D. could have rained

9. He doesn't know to make good use of the enormous calculative capability of computer; this job ________ within an hour.

A. should finish B. must have finished
C. could be finishing D. ought to have been finished

10. It's a pity you failed in this course. You ________ the book on the professor's reading list before you took the final examination.

A. might have read B. should have read
C. must have read D. have read

11. We ________ her letter last week. We don't know what has happened to her.

A. must receive B. must have received
C. should not have received D. ought to have received

12. Since it's snowing heavily, we ________ stay at home.

A. had better not B. must C. had better to D. might as well

13. The wine bottle is nearly empty; you ________ a lot.

A. may have drunk B. must have drunk
C. ought to have drunk D. could have drunk

14. David didn't tell his wife that he had been fired, but he ________.

A. would do B. had do C. should have D. might have to

15. Why didn't you tell me you could lend me the money? I ________ it from the bank.

A. needn't have borrowed B. can't have borrowed

C. must have borrowed D. may have borrowed

16. Mr. Ross bought a blue rag yesterday, but Mr. Ross ________ the brown one.

A. would rather buying B. would rather have bought

C. would rather buy D. would rather to buy

17. He ________ gone back to work without the doctor's permission. Now he was to stay in bed for a couple of days.

A. needn't have B. wouldn't have C. couldn't have D. shouldn't have

18. It was very kind of you to do the washing up, but you ________ it.

A. needn't have done B. mustn't have done

C. should have done D. wouldn't have done

19. There is nothing to do tonight, so we ________ to the movie.

A. might have to go B. ought to have gone

C. may as well go D. could have gone

20. I ________ thank you too much for your help. Without your help, I could not have achieved my goal.

A. must not B. can't C. may not D. need not

21. Look at his new house. He ________ have a lot of money.

A. should B. shall C. may D. must

22. What time ought I ________?

A. arrived B. arriving C. arrive D. to arrive

23. Ronald ________ stay in his small garden for a long time every day in the past.

A. could B. might C. should D. would

24. I wonder how he ________ that to the teacher.

A. dare to say B. dare to saying C. not dare say D. dared say

25. The dog ________ hibernate（冬眠）in winter.

A. don't need B. doesn't need to C. needs not to D. needs not

26. I didn't hear the phone. I ________ asleep.

A. must be B. must have been C. should be D. should have been

27. —We didn't see Tom at the meeting yesterday.

—He ________ it.

A. mustn't have attended B. cannot have attended

C. needn't have attended D. would have not attended

28. You ________ yesterday if you were really serious about your work.

A. ought to come B. ought to be coming

C. ought to have come D. ought have come

29. You ________ all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked a shop assistant.

A. didn't need to carry B. needn't have carried

C. needn't carry D. didn't need carry

30. It ________ be too strongly emphasized that mathematics is the basis of science.

A. must not B. can't C. may not D. need not

Keys:			
1—5 D C D D C	6—10 B C C D B	11—15 D D B C A	16—20 B D A C B
21—25 D D D D B	26—30 B B C B B		

Many a little makes a mickle.
积少便成多。
Patience and application will carry us through.
忍耐和专心会使我们渡过难关。
Fortune often rewards with interest those that have patience to wait for her.
做事只要有耐心，到头总会有好运。（耐心候好运，好运常会来。）

第七节 形容词、副词

形容词是用来修饰、描述名词或代词的词，主要用作定语、表语和补足语等。副词是用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词、介词短语或全句的词。

1. 形容词的一般用法：

主要用来修饰名词或不定代词，表示人或事物的性质、状态和特征的词。形容词在句中可作表语、定语、补语等。如：

Be careful about what you say. 说话要小心。

The sunset was a beautiful sight. 日落是一种美丽的景象。

I find it easy to get on with him. 我发现和他相处很容易。

1.1 形容词 + 名词，作定语。如：a good girl 一位好姑娘

1.2 be + 形容词，作表语。如：The meal is delicious. 这顿饭真好吃。

1.3 不定代词 + 形容词，作后置定语。如：something wrong 错事

1.4 the + 形容词，表示一类人或物。如：the rich 富人，the old 老人。

1.5 表语形容词 alone，asleep，alike，alive，awake，ashamed，afraid 等以 a 开头的形容词不能作前置定语，但可作表语或后置定语。此外，ill（病的），well（健康的），frightened（害怕的）等形容词也只能位于系动词后面作表语。如：

You are the happiest children alive. 你是活着的最幸福的孩子。

The boy is ill. （正）这个男孩病了。

The ill boy is here. （误）

1.6 定语形容词 little，only，wooden，woolen，elder 等词只能作定语，不能作表语。如：

My elder brother is in Beijing. （正）我哥哥在北京。

My brother is elder. （误）

2. 形容词的常用句式：

2.1 "It's + *adj.* + of + sb. + 不定式"表示"某人做某事怎样"，这一句型中常用描述行为者的性格、品质的形容词，如 good，kind，nice，polite，clever，foolish，lazy，careful，careless，right，wrong 等。如：

It was very cruel of them to eat rare wild animals. 他们吃稀有的野生动物是非常残忍的。

It's very kind of you to tell me the truth. 你真是太好了，告诉我真相。

2.2 “It's + *adj.* + for + sb. + 不定式”表示“对某人来说做某事怎样”，这一句型中常用描述做某事

性质的形容词，如 important，necessary，difficult，easy，hard，dangerous，safe，useful，pleasant，interesting 等。如：

It's inconvenient for me to write the whole book by hand. 手工抄写整本书对我来说很麻烦。

It's necessary for you to hurry up，otherwise you will be late. 你必须快点，否则你会迟到的。

It's impossible for a child to learn everything. 孩子不可能学所有的东西。

3. 副词的一般用法：

主要用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词或全句，说明时间、地点、程度、方式等概念的词。副词在句中主要作状语。如：

He knew London very well. 他对伦敦很熟悉。

You need to form the habit of reading carefully. 你需要养成仔细阅读的习惯。

注：here，there，in，out，away，abroad 等少数副词也可以作表语；here，there，home，abroad，below 等表示地点或方位的词及 today，tomorrow，yesterday，back，out 等表示时间或动词方向词还可以作定语。如：

I don't think she is here now. 我认为她现在不在这里。

Most people there are farmers. 那里多数人都是农民。

3.1 副词通常放在被修饰的动词后面。如：

Please listen to me carefully. 请仔细听我说。

3.2 always，usually，never，ever，just，shortly，seldom，hardly，scarcely，no sooner，rarely 等频率副词常放在助动词、情态动词或 be 之后或实义动词之前，但在省略句或强调结构中必须放在助动词、情态动词或 be 之前。如：

San Francisco is usually cool in summer，but Los Angeles rarely is. 夏天，旧金山通常很凉爽，但洛杉矶凉爽的时候很少。

3.3 actually，briefly，certainly，(un) fortunately，surely 等频度副词对全句进行修饰，常放在句首，并用逗号与后面的陈述句子隔开。如：

Not surprisingly，the process of choosing name varies widely from culture to culture. 起名字的方法因文化不同而不同，这一点也不奇怪。

Fortunately，the planes appear to be quite safe. 幸好，这种飞机好像相当安全。

Unfortunately，belts are worn only by a small percentage of drivers and passengers. 不幸的是，只有少数驾驶员和旅客系安全带。

3.4 程度副词 very，much，almost，hard，nearly，fairly 通常放在所修饰词的前面。如：

He thinks that he is nearly always in the right. 他认为他几乎总是正确的。

4. 要注意下列词形相同的形容词与副词：fast，late，straight，hard，direct，short，long，high 的用法。

a straight line 一条直线	go straight to the school 直接去学校
a late dinner 很迟的晚饭	return home late 很晚才回家
a fast train 快车	relieve my headache fast 很快减轻了我的头痛
a hard task 艰巨的任务	try hard to convince him 努力使他相信
a direct road 直路	fly direct to New York 直飞纽约

a long rest 长时间休息　　　　He died long ago. 他很久以前就去世了。

其中几个词还有带有-ly 的副词形式，lately/recently（最近），hardly，directly（直接地，立即），shortly（立即，简略地）。如：

I haven't seen him lately. 我最近没见过他。

Mr. Jones will be back shortly. 琼斯先生很快就会回来。

5. 形容词、副词比较级

5.1　形容词、副词原级比较

其基本结构为“as + *adj.* /adv. + as”，as... as 意思为“和……一样”。使用时要注意第一个 as 为副词，第二个 as 为连词。如：

This film is as interesting as that one. 这部电影和那部电影一样有趣。

Your pen writes as smoothly as mine. 你的钢笔书写起来和我的一样流畅。

其否定式为 not as/so + *adj.* /*adv.* + as。如：

This dictionary is not as/so useful as you think. 这本字典不如你想象的那样有用。

注意：

① as... as 结构中，要使用形容词或副词的原形。

② as... as 结构用于肯定句，not as... as，not so... as 只用于否定句，用来表示“不如……那样……”。值得注意的是：它表示的内容总是前者不如后者。使用副词表示“不相等”的句型中，“not as/so... as...”中的 not 要和助动词 do，does，did 等一起放在行为动词前，来构成否定句。如：He doesn't walk as/so slowly as you. 他走路不像你那么慢。

③ as... as 结构中，若出现名词，一般将名词放在 as... as 中间。若有形容词作定语修饰单数可数名词，其前的不定冠词 a/an，须放在形容词之后。如：

He is as good a swimmer as any one of us. 他和我们中的任何人一样擅长游泳。

We haven't seen so beautiful a place as Beijing before. 我们以前从未见过像北京这样美丽的地方。

5.2　as... as 结构后接具体数字时，是表示长、短、高、矮、重、轻等的程度，意思为“高达……，多达……”等，而不是表示两者的比较。如：

Tuition at a Chinese university runs as high as 4,000 *yuan* a semester. 中国大学的学费每学期高达 4 000 元。

Some stones weigh as much as fifteen tons. 有些石头重达十五吨。

5.3　倍数的表达方式

用 times 表示倍数（一般限于包括基数在内三倍或三倍以上的，表示两倍的数一般有 twice）。其句式有：

①“A + 谓语动词 + 倍数 + as + *adj.* /*adv.* + as + B”表示“A 是 B 的几倍”。

This table is three times as long as that one. 这张桌子是那张桌子的三倍长。

This dictionary is five times as thick as the one you borrowed from the library. 这本字典的厚度是你从图书馆借的那本的 5 倍。

②“A + 谓语动词 + 倍数 + the + *n.*（size，height，length，width etc.）of B”表示“A 是 B 的几倍”。如：

The earth is 49 times the size of the moon. 地球的体积是月球的 49 倍。

The river is three times the depth of that one. 这条河是那条河的三倍深。

③“A + 谓语动词 + 倍数 + 比较级（bigger，higher，longer，wider，faster etc.）+ than B”表示“A 比 B……几倍”。如：

Line AB is three times longer than line CD. 线段 AB 比线段 CD 长三倍。

This hall is five times bigger than our classroom. 这个大厅比我们的教室大 5 倍。

④ "A + 谓语动词 + 倍数 + as + many （much） + as + B" 表示 "A 是 B 的几倍"。如：

He has got three times as many books as his sister. 他拥有书的数量是他妹妹的三倍。

We have produced twice as much cotton this year as we did ten years ago. 今年我们生产的棉花是十年前的两倍。(汉语中的两倍也可以说成多一倍。)

⑤ "A + 谓语动词 + 倍数 + more + *n.* + than + B" 表示 "A 比 B……几倍"。如：

He earns five times more money than he did ten years ago. 他现在挣的钱比十年前挣的多 5 倍。

There are twice more students in our class than in theirs. 我们班的学生人数比他们班多两倍。

⑥ "A + 谓语动词 + 比较级 + than + any other + 单数名词 （ + 介词短语）" 表示 A 比 （同一范围内任何人/物） 都. . . . . ，其真正含义为 "A 最……"。如：

Xiaoming is taller than any other boy in his class. 小明比班里其他男孩高。

Xiaoming is the tallest boy in his class. 小明是他班里最高的男孩。

⑦ "A + 谓语动词 + the + 比较级 + than + of the two" 表示 "A 是两者中较……的"。如：

Look at the two boys. Xiaoming is the taller than of the two. 看那两个男孩，小明是两个中较高的那个。

注意：两者做比较，比较级前一定加定冠词 the。

6. 形容词、副词变体比较级

6. 1 The more. . . the more. . . 越……越…… （表示一方随着另一方变化）。如：

The harder you work, the greater progress you will make. 你越努力工作，取得的进步就越大。

The more you learn, the more you find you don't know. 学到的知识越多，你就发现自己知道的越少。

6. 2 more and more 越来越…… （表示事物本身的变化）。如：

The weather is getting colder and colder. 天气越来越冷了。

He is getting taller and taller. 他长得越来越高了。

6. 3 not so much. . . as. . . /be more. . . than. . . 与其说……不如说。如：

She is more shy than timid. 与其说她胆怯不如说她害羞。

The function of a school education is not so much to teach you things as to teach you the art of learning. 学校教育的功能与其说是教给你知识不如说是教给你学习的技巧。

He is not so much a writer as a reporter. 与其说他是作家不如说他是记者。

6. 4 superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior 等以-（i） or 结尾的形容词构成比较级时，比较对象由 to 引出。如：

The method is inferior to that one. 这个方法不如那个好。

He is ten years senior to me. 他比我年长 10 岁。

This task is prior to all others. 先做这项任务。

This tape recorder is far superior to that one both in quality and in design. 这台录音机在质量和设计上都比那台录音机好得多。

6. 5 特殊结构：

I prefer to work rather than sit idle. 我宁愿工作也不愿闲坐着。

He would sooner resign than take part in such dishonest business deals. 他宁愿辞职也不愿参加这种不诚实的商业交易。

7. 形容词、副词的有关知识

7. 1 much, even, still, far, by far, a little, a great deal, slightly 等词可以修饰比较级，by far, nearly, almost, by no means, very, the very 以及序数词等可以修饰最高级。如：

The latter is far better than the former. 后者比前者好很多。

It is quicker by far to go by train. 乘火车要快得多。

It is even colder than yesterday. 今天比昨天更冷。

注意：by far 修饰比较级（后置）和修饰最高级（前置）时的不同位置。

7.2 如果形容词前的 most 相当于 very 时，不带定冠词。如：

These are most delicious cakes. 这些是最美味的蛋糕。

What you have said is most interesting. 你所说的是最有趣的。

7.3 of，in 两者都可以用在最高级的句子里表示比较范围。

of 表示属性，意为"在……当中"，后接复数名词（有时可省略）或代词，句子主语和 of 后的名词是同类相比，即人与人比较、物与物比较，如：

Mary is the youngest of the three (girls). 玛丽是三个女孩中最小的。

in 表示"在……范围"之内，侧重比较的范围，后接单数地点名词。句子主语和 in 后的名词是人（物）与地点的关系。如：

Bill is the youngest in our class. 比尔是我们班最小的。

7.4 比较对象前后一致表示相同概念时，后一比较对象可用 that/those，one/ones 代替，that/one 用来代替可数名词单数或不可数名词；而 those/ones 则用来代替可数名词复数。如：

The output of this year is as much as that of last year. 今年的产量和去年的一样多。

Moral values in America are like those in any culture. 美国的道德价值观跟其他文化中的相似。

The blonde girl I saw was older than the one you were dancing with. 我看到的白肤金发碧眼女孩比和你一起跳舞的女孩年长。

The new designs are much better than the old ones. 新的设计比旧的好多了。

Grammar Test

1. Prices for bikes at that store can run ________ $230; I'm afraid that we have to try another store.
   A. as high as　B. as high to　C. so high to　D. so high as
2. It seemed that the more he tried to help her, ________ she seemed to appreciate it.
   A. less　B. lesser　C. the less　D. the lesser
3. Consumers should do ________ than simply complain about the poor quality of goods.
   A. some more　B. much　C. for less　D. more
4. We did not find ________ to prepare for the worst conditions we might face.
   A. it worth　B. it worthy　C. it worthwhile　D. worth our while
5. He has not ________ prejudice against you or anybody else in such matters.
   A. the less　B. little　C. more　D. the least
6. Beethoven is my favorite musician, I regard him as ________ other musicians.
   A. superior to　B. more superior than　C. more superior to　D. superior than
7. His salary as a driver is much higher ________.
   A. than a teacher　B. than that of a teacher
   C. than of a teacher　D. than those of a teacher
8. ________ all the poems I have read recently, Thomas Hardy's *The Darkling Thrust* seems the most relevant to our times.
   A. In　B. About　C. Of　D. Among
9. The culture and customs of American are more like ________ of England than of any other country.
   A. that　B. what　C. which　D. those
10. Dried foods take up less room and weigh ________ than the same food packed in cans, and they do

not need to be stored in special condition.

A. few B. fewer C. little D. less

11. Although I'm inferior ________ you, you shouldn't put on airs with me.

A. with B. to C. than D. in

12. Smoking is so harmful to personal health that it kills ________ people each year than automobile accidents.

A. seven more times B. seven times more

C. over seven times D. seven times

13. The chief reason for the population growth is not so much a rise in birth rates ________ a fall in death rates as a result of improvements in medical care.

A. and B. so C. but D. as

14. He knows little of mathematics, and ________ of chemistry.

A. even more B. still more C. still less D. no less

15. The number of registered candidates for this year's entrance examination to master's degree programs is twice ________.

A. of last year's B. those of last year's

C. of those of last year D. that of last year's

16. Questioning the quality of the air they breathe becomes less important than ________ about the next paycheck.

A. having questioned B. questioning

C. to have questioned D. question

17. The new method for refining aluminum was ________ that it became practical for many purposes, one of the first of which was for making pots and pans.

A. so more cheaper B. so many cheaper

C. so much cheaper D. such much cheaper

18. ________ living things are linked together as intimately as bees and flowers.

A. Fewer B. Few C. Little D. Less

19. I was as much at a loss ________.

A. as the others did B. as others all were

C. as others was D. as all the others were

20. The doctor considers going bed early to be more sensible ________.

A. but staying up late B. than to stay up late

C. than staying up late D. than staying up lately

21. Even though she looks very young, she is twice ________ my twenty-year-old sister.

A. as old as B. older than C. so old as D. as older as

22. Americans eat ________ as they actually need every day.

A. twice as much protein B. twice protein as much

C. protein as much twice D. protein as twice much

23. The more we study during the term, ________ we have to study before exams.

A. the less B. the fewer C. the little D. the few

24. She prefers to die rather than ________ that she is wrong.

A. to admit B. admit C. admitting D. admitted

25. This is ________ the most difficult job I have ever tackled.
A. by rights B. by far C. by itself D. by much

26. He likes doing some reading at home ________ to the cinema.
A. than to go B. more than going
C. than going D. rather than to go

27. The effects of smoking are said to be more harmful than ________ drinking.
A. that of B. which of C. those of D. what of

28. She is older than ________ in the group.
A. any girl B. all girls C. any other girl D. any others girl

29. The higher the mountain is, ________ the air is at the summit.
A. the warmer B. the nicest C. the colder D. the thicker

30. You can't be ________ careful in making the decision as it was such a critical case.
A. quite B. so C. very D. too

Keys:
1—5 A C D C D 6—10 A B A D D 11—15 B B D D D 16—20 B C B D C
21—25 A A A B B 26—30 B C C C D

If you weep for the missing sunset, you would miss all the shinning stars.
如果你为错过夕阳而哭泣，那么你就要错过群星了。
The good seaman is known in bad weather.
惊涛骇浪，方显英雄本色。
Rome was not built in a day.
罗马并非一日建成。(坚持必成。)

第八节 倒装、强调、反义疑问句

倒装

倒装是指主谓颠倒，即谓语置于主语之前。倒装分为完全倒装和部分倒装。完全倒装是整个句子的谓语置于句首，部分倒装是将助动词、情态动词、系动词置于句首。常见的倒装为部分倒装，主要有以下几种情形：

1. 常用的部分倒装结构：

1.1 在含有 if 虚拟语气句中，if 从句中可省略 if 将助动词 should，had，were 提前。如：

Should I become a research student, I would at least master two foreign languages. 想成为一名研究生，我至少要掌握两门外语。

Were I you, I wouldn't feel sorry. 如果我是你，我不会感到难过。

1.2 So，neither，nor 置于句首表示不同主语的同样动作的肯定或否定，以免重复。如：

I have finished reading the book, so has my sister. 我已经读完了这本书，我姐姐也读完了。

He didn't like the film at all, neither/nor did I. 他一点也不喜欢这部电影，我也不喜欢。

注意：如果只是重复前面的一句话，主语指同一事物或人，则不需要倒装。如：

—It was cold yesterday. 昨天很冷。

—So it was. 是的，昨天很冷。

1.3 在让步状语、方式状语和比较状语从句中的倒装。

在 as 方式和 than 比较状语从句中，如果谓语及其后的成分与主句相应的部分一致，可根据主句中谓语的时态分别用 do，does 或 did 来代替。因其过于简短置于从句主语之前，避免头重脚轻。如果主语是代词，则不能倒装。如：

Child as he was，he could understand his mother's great pain. 尽管他是一个孩子，但他能理解他母亲的巨大痛苦。

The business is good，be it selling goods or shipping them. 无论是卖货还是送货都是好生意。

He traveled a great deal，as did most of his friends. 他和他的大多数朋友一样经常旅行。

He believed，as did the whole class，window had been broken the night before. 他和全班同学一样认为，前一天晚上窗户被打破了。

1.4 否定词/半否定词/含有否定意义的词语开头的句子要用倒装。常见的否定词汇有：

never，seldom，little，few，not...until，not only（...but also），nowhere，hardly/scarcely...when...，no sooner ...than...，by no means，at no time，under/in no circumstances，in no case...。如：

At no time will China be the first to use nuclear weapons. 无论何时中国都不会第一个使用核武器。

Seldom do we go for picnics. 我们很少去野餐。

Never in all my life have I heard such nonsense. 我一生中从来没有听说过这样荒谬的话。

By no means can we create or destroy energy. 我们绝不能创造或摧毁能量。

No sooner had she found her purse missing than she cried and shouted loudly. 她一发现钱包丢了就大哭大闹起来。

In no way can she give in. 她决不让步。

Not only did he show himself a good student，but he also proved himself a good athlete. 他不仅表明自己是一个好学生，而且他也证明了自己是一个出色的运动员。

Not only is he a teacher，but he is also a poet. 他不仅是一位教师，而且是一位诗人。

① not... until...放在句首，主句用倒装，从句不用倒装。如：

Not until last week did they find the lost bike. 直到上周，他们才找到丢失的自行车。

Not until my son had entered the university did he realize the importance of time. 直到我儿子上大学，他才认识到时间的重要性。

② hardly ...when...，no sooner ...than....，not only...but also.....连接的句型，前半句用倒装语序，后半句不用倒装语序。如：

Hardly had he finished his speech when the audience started cheering. 他一做完报告，观众就开始欢呼起来。

I had no sooner reached home than it began to rain. 我一到家天就下起雨来。

1.5 so + *adj.* /*adv.* ....that 或者 to such a degree/an extent，位于句首的时候要倒装。如：

So much does he worry about her that he can't sleep at night. 他如此担心她以致晚上睡不着。

So fast did he walk that none of us was his equal. 他走得如此之快以致没人能跟上他。

So dangerous was the storm that the match had to be stopped. 暴风雨如此危险，以致比赛不得不停止。

1.6 “Only + 状语” 位于句首的时候要倒装。如：

Only in this way can you learn English well. 只有通过这种方式。你才能学好英语。

Only when flowers bloom together can spring be considered here. 只有花都开了，春天才来了。/百花齐放春满园。

Only under special circumstances are freshmen permitted to take makeup tests. 只有在特殊情况下大

学一年级的新生才被允许参加补考。

注意：only 修饰主语时，句子不可倒装。如：

Only he can answer the question. 只有他能回答这个问题。

2. 完全倒装

2.1 “状语 + 谓语 + 主语”结构

该结构中的状语多为表示方位的副词 here，there，in，out，up，down，away 等，或表示地点的介词短语或者表示顺序的副词 now，first，then 等，谓语动词一般局限在表示位置的静态动词 be，stand，lie 等或表示位置转移的动作词 go，come，fall，roll 等，主语往往比较长带有复杂的修饰语。如：

Here comes the bus. 公共汽车来了。

There goes the bell. 上课铃响了。

Here is a letter for you. 这儿有你一封信。

Now comes your turn. 现在轮到你了。

First came the governor and then his aid. 首先来的是州长，然后是他的助手。

There stands a tall pine tree at the top of the hill. 山顶上有一棵高大的松树。

Long long ago，there lived a king. 很久以前，有一个国王。

注意：Here you are./Here it is. 即主语是物主代词时不倒装。

2.2 直接引语放在句首时，主谓语倒装。如上所述，如果主语是代词，则不倒装。试比较：

“What does it mean?” asked the boy. “这是什么意思?”男孩问道。

“What does it mean?” he asked. “这是什么意思?”他问道。

2.3 祝愿句中的倒装：

May you succeed！祝你成功！

Long live the friendship！愿友谊地久天长！

强调：

1. 强调结构的构成：It be + 被强调部分 + that...

这个结构可以强调主语、宾语、状语、宾补和主补。当被强调的部分指人时用 who/that；而被强调的部分是宾语又指人时用 whom/that；被强调部分为物时用 that。

注意：it，that/who 无词汇意义，it 为强调词，引出强调成分。that/who 只起语法连接作用，如果去掉 it，be 和 that/who，剩下部分（有时需做语序调整）仍能组成一个句意通顺完整的句子。如：

It is I who am to blame. 应受责备的人是我。

It was me that/whom she helped yesterday. 昨天她帮助了我。

It's you，rather than he，that are to blame. 该受责备的是你，而不是他。

It is not help but obstacles that make a man. 使人成才的不是助力，而是阻力。

It was in the 1960's that the trade between the countries reached its highest point. 就是在 20 世纪 60 年代，国家之间的贸易达到了顶峰。

2. not ... until ... 的强调句为（不用倒装语序）：**It was not until + 被强调部分 + that...**。如：

It was not until dark that she realized it was too late to go home. 直到天黑她才意识到回家太晚了。

It was not until Anna criticized him that he became aware of his mistake. 直到安娜批评他，他才意识到自己的错误。

注意：not until 的强调句和倒装句比较。

It was not until I came back that he left. （强调句）直到我回来，他才离开。

Not until I came back did he leave.（倒装句）直到我回来，他才离开。

反义疑问句（*The Disjunctive Question*）

反义疑问句由两部分组成：前一部分是一个陈述句，后一部分是一个简短的疑问句，两部分的人称时态应保持一致。

两种形式：

1. 陈述部分肯定式+疑问部分否定式，可记为：前肯后否。
2. 陈述部分否定式+疑问部分肯定式，可记为：前否后肯。

They work hard，don't they？他们努力工作，不是吗？

She was ill yesterday，wasn't she？她昨天病了，是吗？

You didn't go，did you？你没有去，是吗？

He can't ride a bike，can he？他不会骑自行车，是吗？

请注意以下句型的反义疑问句的用法：

1. 当陈述部分的主语是 everyone，everything，nobody 等不定代词时，疑问部分应为：

Everyone is in the classroom，aren't they？每个人都在教室里，是吗？

Everything begins to grow in spring，doesn't it？万物在春天开始生长，不是吗？

Nobody will go，will they？没有人会去，是吗？

2. 当陈述部分有 never，seldom，hardly，few，little，rarely，scarcely，nothing 等否定词时，疑问部分则表示为：

There are few apples in the basket，are there？篮子里有几个苹果，是吗？

He can hardly swim，can he？他不会游泳，是吗？

They seldom come late，do they？他们很少迟到，是吗？

但当陈述部分有 un- 前缀、-less 后缀（unhappy，dislike，unfriendly，useless）等含有否定词缀的派生词时，疑问部分要用否定形式：

He looks unhappy，doesn't he？他看上去不高兴，不是吗？

The girl dislikes history，doesn't she？这女孩不喜欢历史，不是吗？

3. 当陈述部分是 I/we think，believe，suppose+从句时，疑问句应和从句的人称时态保持一致：

I think chickens can swim，can't they？我认为鸡会游泳，不是吗？

I didn't think he was happy，was he？我觉得他不高兴，是吗？

We suppose you have finished the project，haven't you？我们认为你已经完成了这个项目，不是吗？

I don't believe that he can translate this book，can he？我认为他不会翻译这本书，是吗？

但当主句的主语为第二、三人称时，疑问部分则应与主句相一致（此时，否定只看主句，与从句无关）。

Your sister supposes she needs no help，doesn't she？你姐姐认为她不需要帮助，是吗？

They don't believe she's an engineer，do they？他们认为她不是工程师，是吗？

4. 当陈述部分是祈使句时，疑问部分要根据语气来表达：

Let's go out for a walk，shall we？我们去散步，好吗？

Let us go out for a walk，will you？我们去散步，可以吗？

Turn on the radio，will you？打开收音机，可以吗？

5. 当陈述部分有情态动词 must，问句有 4 种情况：

5.1　mustn't 表示"禁止，不可，不必"时，疑问部分通常要用 must。

You mustn't stop your car here, must you? 你不能把车停在这地方，知道吗？

5.2　must 表示“有必要”时，疑问部分通常要用 needn't.

They must finish the work today, needn't they? 他们今天要完成这项工作，是吗？

5.3　当 must 用来表示对现在的情况进行推测时，疑问部分通常要根据 must 后面的动词采用相应的形式。

He must be good at English, isn't he? 他英语一定学得很好，是吗？

5.4　当 must + have done 表示对过去的情况进行推测（一般句中有明确的过去时间状语），疑问部分要根据陈述部分谓语的情况用“didn't + 主语”或“wasn't/weren't + 主语”；如果强调动作的完成（一般没有明确的过去时间状语），疑问部分要用“haven't/hasn't + 主语”。

She must have read the novel last week, didn't she? 她上星期一定读了这本小说，是吗？

You must have told her about it, haven't you? 你一定把这事告诉她了，是吗？

6. 特殊用法：

6.1　You'd better get up early, hadn't you? 你最好早点起床，不是吗？

We had better go right now, hadn't we? 我们最好现在就走，是不是？

6.2　You ought to tell me about it before you go further, oughtn't/shouldn't you? 你应该在你进一步行动之前告诉我，不是吗？

Such things ought not to be allowed, ought/should they? 这样的事情不该被允许，是吗？

6.3　You have to change your method of operation, don't you? 你必须改变你的操作方法，不是吗？

He had to look carefully to see it, didn't he? 他必须仔细地看才能看到，不是吗？

6.4　They used to get up early, didn'tthey? 他们习惯了早起，不是吗？/是不是？

6.5　There are some apples in the basket, aren't there? 篮子里有一些苹果，是不是？

There isn't any milk left, is there? 没有牛奶剩下，不是吗？

6.6　dare, need 为情态动词时，疑问部分用 need/needn't (dare/daren't) + 主语。

We need not do it again, need we? 我们不需要重做，是吗？

He dare not say so, dare he? 他不敢这样说，是吗？

dare, need 为实义动词时，疑问部分用 do/don't + 主语。

She doesn't dare to go home alone, does she? 她不敢一个人回家，是吗？

We never dared to ask him a question, did we? 我们从来不敢问他一个问题，是吧？

7. 反义疑问句的回答用 yes，no，但是，当陈述部分是否定形式时，回答要按事实。如：

They don't work hard, do they? 他们不太努力工作，是吗？

Yes, they do. 不，他们工作努力。

No, they don't. 对，他们工作不努力。

Grammar Test

1. ________ the airport ________ the old gentleman started for his destination.

A. Hardly had I reached; than　　B. Hardly had I reached; when

C. No sooner had I reached; when　　D. No sooner had I reached; when

2. ________, I would give up smoking as soon as possible.

A. Was I in your place　　B. Were I in your place

C. I was in your place　　D. I were in your place

3. I know you're planning to travel this summer, but do you know ________?

A. how much cost it will be　　B. how much has it cost

C. how much will it cost　　D. how much it will cost

4. ________, everything would have been all right.

A. He had been here　　B. Here he had been

C. Had he been here　　D. Been here he had

5. So dangerous ________ that the match had to be stopped.

A. the storm was　　B. were the storm

C. was the storm　　D. did the storm

6. So little ________ about physics that the lecture was completely beyond me.

A. I knew　　B. did I know

C. I had known　　D. had I knew

7. We are late! Look. ________!

A. There the bus goes　　B. The bus goes there

C. There goes the bus　　D. The bus there goes

8. Only after he has acquired considerable facility in speaking ________ to learn to read and write.

A. he began　　B. will he begin

C. did he begin　　D. much he begin

9. Busy ________ he is, he can fulfill the task ahead of schedule.

A. as　　B. because　　C. can we　　D. shall we

10. ________ did he know the police were after him.

A. So　　B. How　　C. Little　　D. Even

11. We have been told that under no circumstances ________ the telephone in the office for personal affairs.

A. we could use　　B. may we use　　C. we may use　　D. although

12. ________ had I gone out than I heard the sound of the subway train.

A. No sooner　　B. may we use　　C. we may　　D. Hardly

13. At no time ________ of what was happening in his country.

A. the President was aware　　B. was the President aware

C. was aware the President　　D. aware was the President

14. ________, he must be totally exhausted after a two weeks' trip by bus.

A. As he is strong　　B. As a strong man

C. Being very strong　　D. Strong as he is

15. Nowhere else in the world ________ more attractive scenery than in Switzerland.

A. you can find　　B. can you find　　C. is found　　D. has been found

16. Only when it is correct in every detail ________.

A. his model can really run　　B. can his model really run

C. his model really can run　　D. can really his model run

17. Only when your identity has been checked ________.

A. will you be allowed in　　B. you are allow in

C. will you allow in　　D. you will be allowed in

18. Only when you have acquired a good knowledge of grammar ________ write correctly.

A. will you　　B. you can　　C. can you　　D. you could

19. ________ I shouted at the top of my voice did he return his head.

A. Until　　B. Not until　　C. It was not until　　D. Only until

20. Only ________ that it was my birthday.

A. did she remember B. could she remember

C. she remembered D. has she remembered

21. It was from the earliest time ________ men began to study the natural phenomena and heavenly bodies.

A. when B. where C. that D. how

22. It ________ his father ________ made him a lawyer.

A. were; that B. was; that C. was; which D. is; which

23. It was not ________ she took off her dark glasses ________ I realized she was the famous star Zhang Ziyi.

A. when; that B. until; that C. until; when D. when; when

24. Then a new development that had far-reaching effects. China opened its door to the outside world in 1978. ________ that had far-reaching effects.

A. Then came a new development B. Came then a new development

C. Did a new development cone then D. Then did a new development come

25. You are quite wrong. She ________ like you.

A. can B. has C. should D. does

26. ________, it is quite easy to drill a hole on it with laser.

A. Hard although the diamond B. Hard as the diamond is

C. As the diamond is hard D. How hard is the diamond

27. It was ________ it raised many difficult questions that the book took a long time to come out.

A. since B. because C. after D. when

28. It was the color of the material ________ he was surprised at.

A. who B. that C. which D. what

29. It is ________ he is determined.

A. buying a new car that B. to buy a new car that

C. to buy a new car what D. buying a new car which

30. It was not until he arrived at the railway station ________ he realized he had forgotten his ticket.

A. before B. since C. when D. that

31. Only recently ________ to realize the dangers caffeine might bring to our health.

A. that scientists began B. have scientists begun

C. scientists have begun D. that did scientists begin

32. Not until the year of 1954 ________ made the capital of this country.

A. that city was B. was the city

C. when the city was D. was when the city

33. ________ the doctor right away, he might be alive today.

A. Should he have gone to B. If he went to

C. Were he to go D. Had he gone to

34. —Does your father call you very often?

—Yes, my father calls about once a week and ________.

A. so my brother does B. my brother does so

C. so does my brother D. does so my brother

35. ________ succeed in doing anything. Everybody believes this.
A. Only by working hard we can
B. By only working hard we can
C. Only by working hard can we
D. Only we can by working hard

36. My mother will not allow me to buy a car ________.
A. may father will either
B. either my father will
C. either will my father
D. nor will my father

37. ________ than he was asked to start another long journey to the coast.
A. No sooner had he arrived home
B. No sooner did he arrive home
C. No sooner he arrived home
D. No sooner he had arrived home

38. Not until a monkey is several years old ________ to exhibit sign of independence from its mother
A. does it begin B. it begins C. and begin D. beginning

39. ________ I known what he was really like, I would never have married him.
A. Have B. Did C. Had D. would

40. It was not until she got home ________ Jeniffer realized she had lost her keys.
A. when B. that C. where D. before

41. I don't think that the necklace is made of diamond, ________?
A. do I B. do you C. isn't it D. is it

42. It's my son's wedding next week, and I have to do my best for that, ________?
A. haven't I B. don't I C. don't he D. isn't it

43. No one left here yesterday, ________?
A. didn't they B. did they C. didn't one D. did one

44. Birds rarely build nests in our garden, ________?
A. don't they B. do they C. didn't they D. did they

45. You must have been to the Great Wall, ________?
A. mustn't you B. haven't you C. aren't you D. must you

Keys:

1—5 B B D C C　6—10 B C B A C　11—15 B A B D B　16—20 B A C B C
21—25 C B B A D　26—30 B B B B D　31—35 B B D C C　36—40 D A A C B
41—45 D B B B B

Genius only means hard-working all one's life. —Mendeleyev, Russian chemist
天才只意味着终身不懈地努力。—俄国化学家门捷列耶夫
Great hopes make great man.
远大的希望造就伟大的人物。
No way is impossible to courage.
勇士面前无险路。

第九节 主谓一致

1. 主谓一致有以下三条原则:

1.1 语法一致原则,即在语法形式上保持一致。主语是单数形式,谓语动词也采取单数形

式；主语是复数形式，谓语动词也采取复数形式。如：

The students are very young. 学生们都很年轻。

This picture looks beautiful. 这幅画看起来很漂亮。

1.2 意义一致原则，即从意义着眼处理一致关系。主语形式虽是单数但意义是复数，谓语动词也采取复数形式；而有些主语形式虽是复数但意义上看作单数，谓语动词也采取单数形式。如：

The people in that country are fighting for independence. 那个国家的人民正在为独立而战。

The crowd deeply respect their leader. 群众深深地尊敬他们的领袖。

Three years in a strange land seems a long time. 在陌生的地方待三年似乎是一段很长的时间。

1.3 就近原则，即谓语动词的单数或复数形式取决于最靠近它的词语。如：

Neither he nor I am going to see the film tonight because we are busy. 今晚我和他都不去看电影，因为我们很忙。

2. 根据以上三条原则，主谓一致有如下用法：

2.1 下列结构作主语，谓语动词一般用单数形式。

① 表示时间、重量、长度、价值的名词作主语，谓语动词通常用单数形式。如：

Two hundred miles is a long distance. 二百英里是一段很长的距离。

Ten dollars is a high price for that book. 十美元对那本书来说是很高的价格。

② 由 anyone，anything，anybody，no one，nothing，everyone，everybody，everything，someone，somebody，each，either，neither 等不定代词作主语，谓语动词使用单数形式。如：

Someone is knocking at the door. 有人在敲门。

Anything is better than going to the movie tonight. （做）任何事情都比今晚去看电影好。

③ 由“a series of，a kind of，a portion of + 名词”作主语，谓语动词应用单数形式。如：

A series of debates is scheduled to be held next week. 一系列的辩论将于下周举行。

There is a kind of bird in the zoo. 动物园里有一种鸟。

This kind of fruit is very nice. 这种水果很好吃.

注意：kinds of 的用法

All kinds of birds are in the zoo. 动物园里有各种各样的鸟。

Many kinds of plants are green. 许多种植物都是绿色的。

④ 由“many a，more than one + 单数名词”作主语，尽管意义上表示复数，但谓语动词仍采用单数形式。如：

Many a person in these circumstances has hoped for a long break. 在这种情况下，许多人都希望能有一个长时间的休息。

There is more than one answer to your question. 你的问题不止一个答案。

⑤“名词 + and + 名词”作主语，表示同一人、同一概念或事物时，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

A writer and educator is giving a lecture now. 一个作家和教育家正做一个讲座。（这个人既是作家又是教育家）

⑥“either（neither）+ of + 复数名词（或代词）”作主语，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

If either of you takes a vacation now，we will not be able to finish the work. 如果你现在想休假，我们将无法完成这项工作。

Neither of them wants to come. 他们两个都不想来。

⑦ 在 each... and each...，every... and every...，many a ... and many a...，no... and no... 等结构之后，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

Each minute and each second is important. 每分每秒都很重要。

Each man and each woman has the right to vote. 每个男人和每个女人都有选举权。

Every boy and every girl is given a new book. 每个男孩和每个女孩都有一本新书。

Many a desk and many a chair has been taken out of the classroom. 许多桌子和椅子都被搬离了教室。

No teacher and no student is in library in holiday. 放假期间没有老师和学生在图书馆。

⑧ 动词不定式、动名词或名词性从句作主语时，谓语动词一般用单数形式。如：

What I want to say is none of your business. 我想说的不关你的事。

Listening to the classical music is enjoyable. 听古典音乐是令人愉快的。

注意：what 从句作主语时，若从句内容是单数概念，谓语用单数，若含有复数意义，谓语用复数。如：

What we need is fresh water. 我们需要的是淡水。

What we need are useful books. 我们需要的是有用的书籍。

⑨ 以-ics 结尾的复数名词指一门学科时，如：politics（政治学），mathematics（数学），statistics（统计学），acoustics（声学），linguistics（语言学）等，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

Mathematics is what he majors in. 数学是他的专业。

2.2 下列结构作主语，谓语动词单复数形式取决于 of 后的名词。

① 由“all，none，no，most，half，the last，the rest，the remainder + of + 名词”等不定代词主语，谓语动词单复数形式由 of 后名词的单复数而定。如：

None of the food is wasted. 没有一点食物被浪费。

None of the students were absent. 没有一个学生缺席。

The rest of the lecture was dull. 剩下的课都是枯燥无味的。

The rest of the bikes were on sale yesterday. 其余的自行车昨天降价出售了。

② 由“lots of，loads of，scads of，heaps of + 名词”作主语，谓语动词单复数形式由 of 后名词的单复数而定。如：

Lots of work is to be done this week. 这周有许多工作要做。

Lots of people are going to swim this afternoon. 今天下午有很多人要去游泳。

There is loads of milk on the farm. 农场里有大量的牛奶。

There are loads of big red apples on the ground. 地上有许多大红苹果。

There is just scads of stuff on families and marriage, but very little on friendship. 有关婚姻与家庭的材料多如牛毛，而友情方面的却很少。

There is heaps of fun. 有大量的乐趣。

③ 由“分数或百分数十 of + 名词或代词”作主语，谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 of 后名词或代词的单复数形式。如：

Three-quarters of the area is cultivated. 这个地区有四分之三是耕地。

Ninety percent of the students have passed the exam. 百分之九十的学生通过了考试。

2.3 下列结构作主语，谓语动词的单复数形式根据意义而定。

① 由“the + 形容词”这种结构作主语，根据意义一致的原则决定谓语动词的单复数形式。如果表示一类人（如 the rich，the poor，the blind，the deaf，the sick，the young，the old），谓语动词用复数形式；如果表示个人或抽象概念，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

The blind are taught trades in special schools. （表示一类人）盲人在特殊学校受教育。

The good in him overweighs the bad. （表示抽象概念）他的优点大于缺点。

The departed was a good friend of his. （表示个人）死者是他的好朋友。

② family，crowd，committee，class，audience，group，government，team，public，majority，minority 等集合名词作主语，谓语动词单复数形式应根据意义而定。如：

The family like to listen to the music.（the family 指这家人，用作复数）全家人都喜欢听音乐。

The family is small.（the family 指这个家庭，用作单数）这个家庭很小。

The committee has considered your proposal.（the committee 指委员会，用作单数）委员会已经考虑了你的建议。

The committee were arguing for an hour before they gave their votes.（the committee 指委员会的委员们，用作复数）委员们争论了一个小时才给他们投票。

2.4 下列结构作主语，谓语动词一般单复数均可。

① 数词作主语，不论指人还是指物，谓语通常用复数。

About twenty know the secret. 约二十个人知道这个秘密。

Six are missing. 丢了六个。

谓语用单数

Twenty from thirty leaves ten. 三十减二十等于十。

Six sevens are forty-two. 六乘以七等于四十二。

以数词为名词词组中心词作主语时，谓语动词一般单复数均可。如：

Five and six makes/make eleven. 五加六等于十一。

Seven times ten is/are seventy. 七乘十等于七十。

② 由 "one in/out of + 名词" 作主语，谓语动词单复数均可。如：

One in ten were/was present. 十分之一的人出席了。

2.5 下列结构作主语，谓语动词用复数形式。由 and 或 both...and 连接两个单数形式的名词词组作主语时，一般谓语动词用复数形式。如：

A girl and a boy want to go. 一个女孩和一个男孩想去。

Both rice and wheat are grown in that country. 那个国家种植水稻和小麦。

2.6 下列结构作主语，谓语动词单复数形式视具体情况而定。

① 由 as well as，together with，along with，with，besides，like，but，except，accompanied by，rather than，including 连接两个名词作主语，谓语单复数形式应由连接词前的名词而定。如：

Tom as well as his parents is going to London. 汤姆和他的父母要去伦敦。

The president of the college，together with the deans，is planning a conference for the purpose of laying down certain regulations. 学院院长和系主任们正在筹备一个会议，目的是制定一些规章制度。

He，along with his students，is good. 他和他的学生都很好。

The young mother with her two children is coming now. 那个带着两个孩子的年轻母亲现在就要来了。

Besides Tom，Mary went boating. 除了汤姆，玛丽也去划船了。

(Tom 和 Mary 都去划船)

No one writes to me besides you. 除你以外，没有人给我写信。

The plant manager，like many technicians，is experienced in designing new products. 工厂经理和许多技术员一样，在设计新产品方面经验丰富。

② "名词 + of + 名词" 作主语，谓语动词单复数形式跟 of 前的名词一致。如：

The picture of the children brings back many memories of my past experiences. 孩子们的照片使我回想起我过去的经历。

The effects of cigarette smoking have been proved to be extremely harmful. 吸烟的影响已被证明是极其有害的。

③ 由 not only... but also, either... or, neither... nor 或 or 连接的并列主语，通常根据就近原则，谓语动词的单复数形式由最接近它的名词词组的单复数形式决定。如：

Not only Mr. Lin but also his son joined the Party two years ago. 不仅林先生而且他的儿子在两年前都入了党。

Either you or I am going there tomorrow. 明天要么你去那里，要么我去那里。

Neither the students nor the teacher knows anything about it. 学生和老师都不知道这件事。

He or you have taken my pen. 他或你拿了我的钢笔。

④ there be 句型中的谓语动词单复数形式一般取决于其后的真正主语的单复数形式。如：

There is a garden in front of the house. 房子前面有个花园。

There are two things I'd like to say here. 我想说两件事。

3. 关于几对容易混淆词组的一致用法

3.1 由"this/that kind/type of + 名词"作主语，谓语动词用单数形式；而由"these/those kinds/types of + 复数名词"作主语，谓语动词用复数形式。如：

This kind of apples is highly priced. 这种苹果价格很高。

Those kinds of tests are good. 那种考试很好。

3.2 由"a number of, a total of, an average of + 复数名词"作主语，谓语动词用复数形式（a 不是特指）；由"the number of, the total of, the average of + 复数名词"作主语，谓语动词用单数形式（the 是特指）。如：

A number of students are waiting for the bus. 许多学生在等公共汽车。

The number of the students in this university is increasing yearly. 这所大学的学生人数每年都在增加。

A total of 3,000 letters were received last month. 上个月共收到 3 000 封信。

The total of letters received last month was 3,000. 上个月收到信件共 3 000 封。

The average of our wage is not very high. 我们工资的平均水平并不高。

We have many books and we have an average of 35 books per person. 我们有很多书，平均每个人有 35 本书。

4. 定语从句中的主谓一致。从句的谓语动词与先行词保持一致。如：

The girl who is singing is my friend. 正在唱歌的那个女孩是我的朋友。

It is I who am wrong. 是我错了。

4.1 由"one of + 复数名词 + who/which/that"引导的定语从句中，先行词是复数名词，通常情况下，从句谓语采用复数形式。如：

John is one of the brightest students that have graduated from Beijng University. 约翰是北京大学毕业的最聪明的学生之一。

He is one of those persons who always think they are right. 他是那种总是认为自己是对的人。

4.2 由"the only one of + 复数名词 + who/that"引导的定语从句中，先行词是 the only one 而不是靠近它的复数名词，从句谓语采用单数形式。如：

She is the only one of those girls who is willing to take a make-up exam. 她是那些女孩中唯一愿意补考的。

Grammar Test:

1. ________ the classroom needs to be cleaned.

A. Either the office or　　　　B. The offices and

C. Both the office and　　D. The office and

2. Seventy percent of the students here ________ from the countryside.

A. is　　B. are　　C. comes　　D. has come

3. Three-fourths of the homework ________ today.

A. has finished　　B. has been finished　　C. have finished　　D. have been finished

4. The total number of the population in China ________ about 1,000 million on April 14,1989.

A. added up　　B. was　　C. were　　D. rose

5. Those who ________ in ________ compositions, please hand them in this afternoon.

A. hasn't handed; his　　B. haven't handed; their

C. has handed; their　　D. have handed; his

6. Jane is one of the best students in her class who ________ by their teacher.

A. were praised　　B. is praised

C. was praised　　D. has been praised

7. He is the only one of the students who ________ elected.

A. are　　B. have　　C. has　　D. is

8. On the wall ________ two large portraits.

A. hang　　B. hangs　　C. hanged　　D. was hanging

9. A library with five thousand books ________ to the nation as a gift.

A. are offered　　B. is offered　　C. have offered　　D. has offered

10. ________ the presents ________ a set of tea things from Jack.

A. In; was　　B. In; were　　C. Among; was　　D. Among; were

11. The rest of the magazines ________ within half an hour.

A. is sold out　　B. are sold out　　C. was sold out　　D. were sold out

12. The Chinese people ________ hard-working and brave.

A. are　　B. is　　C. has been　　D. are being

13. "All ________ present and all ________ going on well," our monitor said.

A. is; is　　B. are; are　　C. are; is　　D. is; are

14. Many a man ________ come to help us.

A. have　　B. has　　C. is　　D. are

15. No one but her parents ________ it.

A. know　　B. knows　　C. is knowing　　D. are knowing

16. You rather than I ________ going to go camp.

A. am　　B. are　　C. is　　D. were

17. Alice, together with two boys, ________ for having broken the rule.

A. was punished　　B. punished

C. were punished　　D. have been punished

18. No bird and no beast ________ in the lonely island.

A. are　　B. is seen　　C. see　　D. sees

19. Every means ________ prevent the water from ________.

A . are used to; polluting　　B. get used to; polluting

C. is used to; polluted　　D. is used to; being polluted

20. Each of the ________ in the ship.

A. passenger has his own room　　B. passengers have their own room
C. passenger have their own room　　D. passengers has his own room

21. What we need ________ good textbooks.
A. is　B. are　C. have　D. has

22. The paper for books and newspapers ________ made from wood.
A. are　B. is　C. has　D. have

23. Here ________ a new pair of shoes for you.
A. is　B. are　C. have　D. has

24. Neither of the novels which ________ popular with us ________ been translated into Chinese.
A. are; has　B. are; have　C. is; have　D. is; has

25. Every boy and every girl ________ to attend the evening party.
A. wish　B. wishes　C. hope　D. are hoping

26. The secretary and treasurer of our company ________ the meeting.
A. were to attend　B. are to attend　C. is attend　D. is to attend

27. Mathematics as well as other subjects ________ a science.
A. was　B. is　C. are　D. belong to

28. Economics, several courses of which I have taken thus far, ________ to be difficult but useful for almost all students.
A. proves　B. prove　C. have been prove　D. are proved

29. Professor Smith, along with his assistants, ________ on the project day and night to meet the deadline.
A. work　B. working　C. is working　D. are working

30. The Olympic Games ________ held every ________ years.
A. are; five　B. is; five　C. are; four　D. is; four

31. A poet and artist ________ coming to speak to us about Chinese literature and painting tomorrow.
A. is　B. are　C. was　D. were

32. Strangely enough, a pair of new trousers ________ among rubbish.
A. were found　B. was found　C. has found　D. have found

33. As you can see, the number of cars on roads ________ rising these days.
A. was keeping　B. keep　C. keeps　D. were keeping

34. Nowadays, a large number of women ________ in the clothing industry.
A. is working　B. works　C. work　D. worked

35. I, who ________ your friend, will try my best to help you with your English.
A. am　B. is　C. are　D. be

36. The rich ________ not always happy.
A. are　B. is　C. has　D. have

37. Neither Tom nor Jack and I ________ his students.
A. are　B. am　C. is　D. was

38. Mary as well as her sisters ________ Chinese in China.
A. are studying　B. have studied　C. studies　D. study

39. Neither my father nor I ________ at home.
A. am　B. is　C. are　D. be

40. Over 80 percent of the population of China ________ peasants.

A. was B. is C. would be D. are

41. The glasses ________ mine. That pair of glasses ________ my brother's.

A. are; is B. are; are C. is; are D. is; is

42. A number of students ________ gone for an outing. The number of the students ________ increasing year.

A. have; has B. is; have C. has; have D. have; is

43. There ________ nothing but two looms in the hall. There ________ something wrong with the machine.

A. was; is B. was; are C. were; is D. were; are

44. He is one of the boys who ________ never late for school. He is the only one of the boys who ________ never late for school.

A. is; are B. are; are C. are; is D. is; is

45. No one but Jane ________ the secret. Nobody but Mary and I ________ in the classroom at that time.

A. know; was B. knows; was C. know; were D. knows; were

46. The girl as well as his parents ________ a bike. Not only the students but also the professor ________ surprised at Mary's answer.

A. have; was B. have; were C. has; was D. has; were

47. Who ________ the girl singing in the next room? Who ________ these people over there?

A. are; are B. are; is C. is; are D. is; is

48. Most of the students ________ boys. Most of his money ________ spent on books.

A. are; is B. is; is C. are; are D. is; are

49. The policeman ________ standing at the street corner. The police ________ searching for him.

A. are; is B. are; are C. is; are D. is; is

50. Tom's teacher and friend ________ Mr. Smith.

A. has B. are being C. is D. are

Keys:

1—5 A B B B B	6—10 A D A B C	11—15 D A C B B	16—20 B A B D D
21—25 B B A A B	26—30 D B A C D	31—35 A B C C A	36—40 A A C A D
41—45 A B A C B	46—50 C C A C C		

第二章

语法专项练习

Grammar Test 1

1. At no time ________ the rules of the game. It was unfair to punish them.

A. they actually broke　　B. did they actually break

C. do they actually break　　D. they had actually broken

2. He decided to put ________ glass on top of his wall ________ boys ________ over it.

A. broken; to prevent; to climb

B. breaking; to prevent; climbing

C. to break; to preventing; climbed

D. broken; to prevent; from climbing

3. You used to smoke a pack of cigarettes a day, ________?

A. did you　　B. used you　　C. didn't you　　D. used you not

4. They insist that a computer does only what thinking humans have planned ________.

A. to have it do　　B. to have it done

C. having it done　　D. to have do it

5. As far as I'm concerned, as we seem ________ the train we may as well ________ back to the house.

A. having missed; go　　B. to miss; to go

C. to have missed; go　　D. to have missed; have gone

6. The songs of Bob Dylan are very popular among people, who regard him ________ other musicians.

A. as superior to　　B. as more superior than

C. as more superior　　D. as superior than

7. Adam is one of those people who, I am sure, always do ________ best to achieve the goal.

A. one's　　B. his　　C. their　　D. ones

8. Many governments have been engaged ________ better welfare service for their people.

A. in providing　　B. to provide　　C. with providing　　D. up providing

9. The reason is ________ this table was not set for practical purpose. It was arranged to satisfy the eye.

A. how　　B. why　　C. which　　D. that

10. Nearly all the sports practiced nowadays are competitive. You play to win, and the game has little meaning ________ you do your utmost to win.

A. as soon as　　B. if　　C. though　　D. unless

11. Were it not for their support and help, we ________ to finish the task ahead of time.

A. would not be able　　B. were not able

C. should not have been able　　D. are not able

12. I had to admit that ________ a second time, the meaning became clear.

A. reading the letter
B. having read the letter
C. as I read the letter
D. the letter being read

13. It is difficult to understand many foreigners who speak Chinese, but some of them speak ________.

A. more clear than other
B. more clearly than others
C. clearer than other
D. clearer than others

14. It is appropriate that some time ________ to thorough study of the Apollo mission.

A. be devoted
B. should been devoted
C. must be devoted
D. devote

15. ________ your children have arrived safe and sound, you can set your mind at ease.

A. Provided that B. If only C. But that D. Now that

16. Linda has kept the wedding picture ________ she can see it every day, as it always reminds her of their honeymoon in Paris.

A. which B. where C. that D. having

17. All flights ________ because of the heavy snow, many passengers could do nothing but take the train.

A. had been canceled
B. have been canceled
C. were canceled
D. having been canceled

18. The government introduced a wage freeze ________ inflation（通货膨胀）might be brought under control.

A. so that B. although C. while D. because

19. If the dog hadn't wakened us we ________ the fire for several hours, and by that time it ________ the house next door.

A. wouldn't have noticed; might have spread to
B. hadn't noticed; had spread to
C. wouldn't notice; would spread to
D. didn't notice; should have spread to

20. It was in the name of freedom ________ Kennedy led his country deeper into its cruel, hopeless war in Vietnam.

A. when B. what C. while D. that

Grammar Test 2

1. Not only ________ the film, but he met and talked with the director as well.

A. he did see B. did he see C. had he seen D. he saw

2. I don't like watching football games, and ________.

A. she doesn't too
B. either doesn't she
C. neither does she
D. she doesn't neither

3. ________ up with the world's best automobile manufacturers, you've got to modernize management, not only equipment.

A. Catching
B. To catch
C. Having caught
D. To be caught

4. There is no denying the fact ________ quite a number of insects, birds and animals are dying out.

A. that B. why C. how D. which

5. The most important part of a computer is the computer brain ________ CPU.

A. known B. known as

C. had know D. to be known as

6. The first thing you should have learned at college is to know on your own. It's time you ________ able to manage your time.

A. could be B. should be C. were D. are

7. A new all-purpose building ________ in the mountain village for shopping, business and indoor sports.

A. is not constructing B. is now being constructed

C. has now constructing D. has been now constructed

8. I quite understand ________ to discuss the matter under the circumstances.

A. not you wanting B. you to not want

C. not your wanting D. your not wanting

9. Do you feel like ________ to a film or would you rather ________ at home?

A. to go; to stay B. going; stay

C. to go; staying D. going; to stay

10. The reason ________ I didn't go to the party was ________ I got a bad cold that evening

A. because; that B. because; because

C. why; that D. why; because

11. Since we didn't have any time to spare, we couldn't visit all the places ________.

A. where I should like to visit B. which I would like to visit them

C. where I would have liked to D. which I should have liked to visit

12. ________ your own private feelings may be, it's best to take his advice.

A. Whatever B. What C. However D. How

13. Only then did the Captain ________ the situation he and his fellow soldiers were in.

A. aware of B. aware

C. become aware of D. become aware

14. According to a medical report, ________ 75 percent of the current violent crime is drug-related.

A. so many as B. as many as

C. so much as D. as much as

15. I don't regret ________ her what I thought of her husband, even though it might have upset her.

A. telling B. to tell

C. that I will tell D. to have to tell

16. The more time you waste, the easier it is to go on ________ time.

A. waste B. to waste C. wasting D. wasted

17. ________ two hours daily has made considerable difference to my physical condition.

A. Walking B. Having been walked

C. I walk D. Having walked

18. If this university ________ such a good reputation, I would not have come here.

A. didn't have B. doesn't have

C. hadn't had D. hasn't had

19. It was the training that he had received in that well-known transnational company ________ made

him such a good sales manager.

A. that　　B. where　　C. when　　D. what

20. I think Mrs. Allen ________ be happier if she had a job outside the home.

A. would　　B. will　　C. can　　D. was going to

Grammar Test 3

1. A month ago, at Giza, just outside Cairo, construction workers unearthed（掘出）some flat stones ________ were written the rules for training school-leavers.

A. where　　B. there　　C. on which　　D. in which

2. The plant community ________ in a certain area becomes a food source for a community of animals ________ to that area.

A. grown; attracting　　B. growing; attracted

C. growing; attracting　　D. grown; attracted

3. The living standard today is much higher than ________.

A. in 1979　　B. 1979　　C. that in 1979　　D. which in 1979

4. I was one of those people who went to college ________ exactly what I wanted to do with my life.

A. knowing　　B. to know　　C. had known　　D. knew

5. The salesman want to get ________ of the profit than he has been offered.

A. ten percent more　　B. ten more percent

C. more than ten percent　　D. as much as ten percent

6. The material of the course is arranged in 24 teaching units, each ________ of an introduction, a text, and some written exercises.

A. has been consisted　　B. consisting

C. consists　　D. consisted

7. The truth is that it is only by studying history ________ we can learn what to expect in the future.

A. in which　　B. that　　C. in that　　D. by which

8. In some countries, ________ is called "equality" does not really mean equal rights for all people.

A. which　　B. what　　C. that　　D. one

9. By the time this article goes to press, I ________ my master's degree in hand.

A. would have　　B. would have had

C. will have had　　D. should have

10. ________ the environment requires planning and cooperation of all countries on earth.

A. To be improving　　B. Improving

C. Having been improved　　D. Improvement

11. In fact, you ________ all the way to meet me here. I can manage to find the place.

A. don't need to come　　B. needn't come

C. didn't need to come　　D. needn't have come

12. The young pilot had completed a cross-country flight ________ he almost collided into another aircraft.

A. of which time　　B. which　　C. at which　　D. during which

13. ________ to the funeral of a big shot（大人物）in show business, the couple tried to get a chance to be seen there.

A. Invited not　　B. Not having invited

C. Weren't invited D. Not having been invited

14. It has been more than ten years ________ I visited Shanghai and I'm determined to enjoy my stay there this time.

A. after B. when C. that D. since

15. Scientists say it may be ten or twenty years ________ it is possible for common people to travel to the moon.

A. while B. before C. after D. since

16. ________ equal opportunities, the twins, having identical brains, would have tested at roughly the same level.

A. Given B. To give C. Giving D. Having given

17. ________ that I had lost Tad's address, I didn't know where I could find him.

A. Due to B. Owing to

C. Because the fact D. Owing to the fact

18. It is reported that Chinese farmers are earning ________ money today as they did 15 years ago.

A. more than twice B. as twice

C. twice more than D. more than twice as much

19. It seems to me that the main requirement of an international language is that it ________ easily learned.

A. can be B. is able to be C. be D. must be

20. A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in the city, ________ were surprising.

A. as results B. which results

C. the results of it D. the results of which

Grammar Test 4

1. ________ in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.

A. The girl was educated B. The girl educated

C. The girl's being educated D. The girl to educate

2. Score one more point, ________ we could have won the last game.

A. but B. so C. and D. or

3. ________ your opinions are worth considering, the committee finds it unwise to place too much importance on them.

A. As B. Since C. Provided D. While

4. I would have gone to visit him in the hospital had it been at all possible, but I ________ fully occupied the whole of last week.

A. were B. was C. had been D. have been

5. The professor can hardly find sufficient grounds ________ he can base his argument in favor of the new theory.

A. which B. on which C. that D. on that

6. Written in a hurry, ________.

A. he made many mistakes in the paper

B. there were a lot of mistakes in the paper

C. we found plenty of errors in the paper

D. the paper was full of errors

7. Some students prefer a strict teacher who tells them exactly what to do while others prefer ________ to work on their own.

A. leaving B. to leave

C. having been left D. to be left

8. The statesman and writer you talked with last month ________ at today's conference.

A. was present B. was presenting

C. were present D. were presenting

9. The science of medicine, ________ we owe a great deal, is perhaps the most important of all the sciences.

A. in which B. to which C. at which D. for which

10. New York area is said ________ more Jews than any other city outside Israel in the world.

A. to have B. having C. to have had D. having had

11. *A Dream of the Red Chamber* is said ________ in dozens of languages in the last decade.

A. to have been translated B. to be translated

C. to translate D. to have translated

12. The salesman told me that a good set of tires ________ to last at least twenty thousand miles.

A. was supposed B. is supposed

C. were supposed D. are supposed

13. The accident ________ him of his sight and the use of his legs.

A. derived B. disabled

C. deprived D. seized

14. My trouble was that I wanted to hug him and I was afraid of ________ if I climbed up on his bed to do it.

A. things Mama would say B. which Mama would say

C. what Mama would say D. that Mama would say

15. ________ science fiction readers became aware of robots, writers were presenting stories of automatons who could surpass men.

A. Long ago B. Before long C. Long since D. Long before

16. Only by asking his closest friends ________ what had happened.

A. he did discover B. he discovered

C. had he discovered D. did he discover

17. Although our team ________ during the first half of the game, they rallied and won the game.

A. could lose B. would have lost C. was losing D. would lose

18. Some of the greatest scholars are incapable when it comes to ________ on their knowledge to others.

A. having it pass B. passing C. have it passed D. pass

19. No one had a slightest idea that the man ________ money from the company for a long time.

A. had been stealing B. should have stolen

C. had stolen D. used to steal

20. The famous painting is believed ________ by a professional thief a couple of days ago.

A. to be stolen B. to have stolen

C. to have been stolen D. having been stolen

Grammar Test 5

1. As a football referee, I hate seeing a player ________ to be hurt, in order to get a free kick.

A. to pretend B. pretending C. to be pretending D. be pretending

2. In this public library, readers are expected, after reading, to put books, magazines, et C. back ________ they belong.

A. where B. what C. to which D. on which

3. The secret of happiness is not in doing what one likes, ________ in liking what one has to do.

A. however B. yet C. but D. and

4. The father is always ________ about his child's success at school.

A. boasted B. boasting C. being boasted D. boasts

5. The scope of his knowledge is ________ he has never failed to answer any question his fellow students ask him.

A. as such B. so that C. so as D. such that

6. You ________, for the concert was canceled due to the sudden illness of the first violinist.

A. didn't need to come B. needn't have come

C. need not to come D. do not need come

7. If you love a person, you surely hope that they will become ________ they can become.

A. all that B. all what C. that all D. that

8. The service in the hospital was terrible. Patients often had to wait for half an hour without ________.

A. attending to B. being attended to

C. being attended D. having been attending

9. In a conversation, ________ think about what you're going to say next, try to understand what people are saying and what you can learn.

A. instead of B. rather than C. except for D. except

10. The weather ________ so fine, they decided to go to the Ming Tomb Reservoir and have a good swim there.

A. is B. to be C. being D. been

11. The city lies where two rivers meet, ________ empties into the Red Sea.

A. the longer of them B. the longer of the two

C. the longer of which D. longer of which

12. I have learned that dreams are never destroyed by circumstances; dreams are born in the heart and mind, and only there ________.

A. they can never die B. can they never die

C. never they can die D. never can they die

13. When they first come to college, they often find ________ to adapt to the way of life there.

A. difficult B. difficulty C. the difficult D. it difficult

14. Because it is challenging, golf offers opportunity for sportsmanship, ________ (you play) alone or in a group.

A. if B. however C. neither D. whether

15. The U. S. is definitely a telephone country. This is due partly to ________ telephone service is good, whereas postal service is less efficient.

A. the reason that B. the reason which

C. the fact that D. the fact which

16. He is the only one of the sons in the family who ________ received higher education.

A. are B. is C. have D. has

17. Humans everywhere are alike in this respect. ________ there is any extra money, they seek to raise their standard of living.

A. As long as B. As soon as C. Unless D. Because

18. Sometimes I think how grateful I would be today if I ________ more back in high school about what really matters.

A. had learned B. learned C. did learn D. would learn

19. In the area, AIDS is ________ disease that the very mention of it strikes terror into the population.

A. a so dreadful B. so dreadful a

C. such dreadful a D. a such dreadful

20. When I began to move round toward the door, the man ________ my thoughts, for he immediately told me to stay where I was.

A. must have guessed B. guessed

C. had guessed D. could guess

Keys:

Grammar Test 1

1-5 B D C A C 6-10 A C A D D 11-15 A C B A D 16-20 B D A A D

Grammar Test 2

1-5 B C B A B 6-10 C B D B C 11-15 D A C D A 16-20 C A C A A

Grammar Test 3

1-5 C B C A A 6-10 B B A C B 11-15 D D D D B 16-20 A D D C D

Grammar Test 4

1-5 C C D B B 6-10 D D A B A 11-15 A A C C D 16-20 D C B A C

Grammar Test 5

1-5 B A C B D 6-10 B A B B C 11-15 C B D D C 16-20 D A A B A

第三章

词 汇 知 识

第一节 词汇考查重点

专升本词汇考点主要涉及了语境词汇题、近形题、近义题和固定搭配题。

一、语境词汇题又叫上下文语义题，这类试题的四个选择词类相同、词义不同，主要考查考生对四个选择项的认词能力，考生只要认识其中三个词，一般就能确定正确答案。

1. He spoke so ________ that even his opponents were won over by his arguments.

A. clearly　　B. convincingly　　C. emphatically　　D. aloud

2. Not having a good command of English can be a serious ________ preventing you from achieving your goals.

A. obstacle　　B. fault　　C. offense　　D. distress

考生只要理解以上两个句子和各个选项的词义，就能非常容易地确定正确答案为 B 和 A。该题目不涉及词性的辨析或句型搭配方面的知识。

二、近形词辨析主要考查考生的辨词能力。真正意义上的近形干扰题的四个选项看似相似，但意义差别较大。

1. Someday software will translate both written and spoken language so well that the need for any common second language could ________.

A. describe　　B. decline　　C. delete　　D. depress

2. He hoped the firm would ________ him to the Paris branch.

A. exchange　　B. transmit　　C. transfer　　D. remove

3. The European Union countries were once worried that they would not have ________ supplies of petroleum.

A. sufficient　　B. proficient　　C. efficient　　D. potential

4. A smart appearance makes a ________ impression at an interview.

A. favorite　　B. favorable　　C. favoring　　D. favored

5. As we all know, fresh air, nutritious food and exercise ________ to better health.

A. attribute　　B. distribute　　C. add　　D. contribute

考生只要能理解题干的句意，并注意每题四个选项的拼写以及构词上的不同，就能比较有把握地确定正确答案为 B、C、A、B 和 D。因为要尽可能使四个选项在外形上相近，所以一般都是同根词干扰。一方面，考生要注意同根词积累，另一方面，在平时的学习中要有意识地积累词形相近的词汇。如：

abroad——aboard	access——excess	adapt——adopt
example——sample	inquire—— require	ensure——insure

contract——contact	affect——effect	staff——stuff
tend——intend	through——thorough	wander——wonder
appeal——appear	principle——principal	sail——sale
attach——attack	confirm——conform	inferior——interior
alive——living	lie——lay	scare——scarce
compliment——complement	imaginary——imaginative	
context—contest—content	late—latter—lately —latest	protest——protect
except—excerpt—expect	incident——accident	expend——expand
inspect—aspect—respect—suspect	lose—lose—lost	purpose——propose

三、近义词辨析主要考查考生的辨词能力

这是一类传统考题中比较典型的题型，专升本考试中，近义干扰题各个选项之间的干扰系数并不大，一般只需抓住题干中的个别关键词并对四个选项的基本用法搭配有所了解，就能选出正确答案。

1. This hotel ________ $60 for a single room with bath.

A. pays　B. costs　C. prices　D. charges

本题四个选项都与钱有关，但只有 D. charge（索价，要价）符合题意。

2. The lawyer advised him to drop the ________, since he stands little chance to win.

A. event　B. incident　C. case　D. affair

本题中虽然 A、B、C、D 都有“事件，事务”的意思，但是 case 还有“案件”的意思，而律师打交道的只能是 case 案件，所以本题选 C。

四、固定搭配

这类试题在词汇题中所占比重较大，主要包括动词的句型用法，名词、形容词与介词、副词的搭配等。

1. ________ the content is concerned, the book is worth reading.

A. As long as　B. As far as　C. As well as　D. As good as

该题的正确答案为 B，搭配 as far as. . . . . is/are concerned 意为“就……而言，对……来说”。

2. Not all persons who are arrested and ________ with a crime are guilty, and the main function of criminal courts is to determine who is guilty under the law.

A. sentenced　B. accused　C. prosecuted　D. charged

该题的正确答案为 D，搭配 be charged with sth. 意为“被起诉，被控告”。

3. When workers are organized in trade unions, employers find it hard to lay them ________.

A. off　B. aside　C. out　D. down

该题的正确答案为 A，搭配 lay off 意为“（暂时）解雇”。

第二节 常用词汇构成法

一、派生法

1. 加前缀

1.1　表示否定

① 不，非 un-，in-，im-，non-，dis-，il-，ir

unfortunately 不幸地，informal 非正式的，impossible 不可能，impatient 没有耐心的，nonprescription 非处方的，nonsmoker 不抽烟的人，dishonest 不诚实的，illegal 非法的，irregular 不规则的

② 反对 anti-

antiwar 反战的，antiaircraft 防空的，antipathy 反感

③ 错误 mis-，mal-

mislead 误导；misunderstand 误解；malfunction 失灵，发生故障；maltreatment 虐待，

④ 相反 counter-

counterattack 反攻，counter-clockwise 逆时针，counterpart 对应的人或物

1.2 表数量

① 半 semi-

semicircle 半圆

② 二，双 bi-

bicycle 自行车，bilingual 通两国语言的，bimonthly 双月刊

③ 三 tri-

triangle 三角形，三角关系

④ 多 multi-

multifunctional 多功能，multinational 多国的，multiply 相乘

1.3 表程度大小

① 在……之上，超越 super-

superior 比……优秀，supernatural 超自然地，supermarket 超市，supervise 监督

② 在……之下，不足 under-

underdeveloped 不发达的

③ 在……之上，越过 over-

oversensitive 过分敏感的，overtime 加班时间

④ 极小的，微型的 mini-

miniskirt 超短裙，minibus 小公共汽车

1.4 位置，方向

① 次于，在下面 sub-

subway 地铁，submarine 潜水艇，subcommittee 小组

② 在一起，交互 inter-

internet 互联网；international 国际的，世界的

③ 横过，贯穿 trans-

transplant 移植，transmit 发射，transform 转变

④ 中，中等的 mid-

midair 半空中

1.5 表时间和顺序

① 在前 fore-，pre-，ex-

foretell 预言，预告；foremost 最重要的，首先；pre-war 战前；pre-waring 预警；ex-wife 前妻；ex-president 前总统

② 之后 post-

post-war 战后；post-it note 即时贴，便利贴

③ 返回，重复 re-

react 反应，rely 回答，revise 修改

1.6 合作，统一

① 合一 co-（变体为：col-，com-，con-，cor-）等

coexist 共存，collaborate 合作，concentrate 集中，correlate 相互关联

② 统一 uni-

uniform 制服，union 联合，universe 宇宙

2. 加后缀

2.1 名词后缀

-er，-or，-ee，-eer，-ist，-ess，-ant	engineer 工程师；employee 雇员；psychologist 心理学家；hostess 女主人，东道主；servant 佣人，仆人；applicant 申请人
-ability，-ibility	adaptability 适应性，可变性；invisibility 看不见
-hood（……状态，……时期）	manhood 男子，男子气概；childhood 儿童时代
-ful（……的量）	handful 一把，mouthful 一口，spoonful 一勺
-tion，-ion	action 行动；活动；education 教育；organization 组织
-ment	movement 行动，development 发展
-age	coverage 覆盖，覆盖范围；breakage 破坏，裂开；shrinkage 收缩，降低
-ness	usefulness 有用，有益；selfishness 自私自利，自我中心
-ity（-ty）	activity 活动，行动，活跃；rapidity 迅速，急速；changeability 可变性
-ism	idealism 理想主义，唯心主义；realism 现实主义；tourism 旅游业
-al	proposal 建议，求婚；arrival 到达；refusal 拒绝
-ship	friendship 友谊；membership 资格，会员身份

2.2 动词后缀

-ify	beautify 美化，diversify 使多样化，simplify 使简单化
-ize	modernize 使现代化；realize 实现，认识到；popularize 普及，使通俗化
-en	widen 放宽，变宽；darken 变黑，变模糊；threaten 威胁，恐吓

2.3 形容词后缀

-able（-ible）	changeable 无常的，可改变的；readable 可读的，易读的；convincible 可信服的，可说服的
-ful	useful 有用的，有意的；hopeful 有希望的；fearful 可怕的，担心的

-less	speechless 说不出话的，非言语所能表达的；childless 无子女的；meaningless 无意义的，无目的的
-ly	manly 雄赳赳的，男子气概的；brotherly 兄弟般的，亲切的；friendly 友好的
-like	childlike 孩子似的，天真烂漫的；statesmanlike 有政治家风度的，与政治家相称的
-y	sandy 多沙的，silky 丝绸一样的，柔滑的；sunny 阳光充足的，快活的
-ish	foolish 傻的，girlish 少女的，blackish 带黑色的
-some	troublesome 麻烦的，令人苦恼的；tiresome 烦人的，无聊的
-ed	pointed 突出的，锐利的；wooded 树木繁茂的
-al	cultural 文化的；personal 个人的，亲自的；musical 音乐的，悦耳的
-ous	glorious 光荣的，辉煌的；gracious 亲切的，高尚的；erroneous 错误的，不正确的
-ic（-ical）	historic 有历史意义的，历史上著名的；historical 历史的，史学的；heroic 英雄的，英勇的
-ive	attractive 有吸引力的；talkative 多话的，爱说的；sensitive 敏感的

2.4 副词后缀

-ly	happily 快乐地，幸福地；boldly 大胆地，冒失地；attentively 聚精会神地
-wise	otherwise 否则，clockwise 顺时针方向地

二、合成法

1. 合成名词

handbook, spaceship, bottleneck, highway, deadline, pickpocket, worksite, sleeping-pill, ruling class, running dog, by-product, overcoat, aftereffect, heartbeat, handwriting, house-keeping, break-through, flyover, handout, statesman, forget-me-not, touch-me-not

2. 合成形容词

home-sick, world-famous, snow-white, bitter-sweet, light-blue, deaf-mute, freezing-cold, soaking-wet, peace-loving, English-speaking, home-made, snow-covered, easy-going, good-looking, new-born, quick-frozen, full-time, new-type, large-scale, first-rate, second-hand, a five-year plan, short-sighted, knee-deep

3. 合成动词

sightsee, baby-sit, window-shop, day-dream, white-wash, safeguard

4. 合成副词

upstairs, out-doors, whole-heartedly, eye-to-eye, face-to-face, hand-in-hand

第四章

词汇专项练习

Vocabulary Test 1

1. In a time of social reform, people's state of mind tend to keep ________ with the rapid changes of society.

A. step B. progress C. pace D. touch

2. Our new house is very ________ for me as I can get to the office in five minutes.

A. adaptable B. comfortable C. convenient D. available

3. The people who objected to the new road were told that since work had already started there was no point in ________.

A. contradicting B. protesting C. competing D. refusing

4. Cambridge had announced plans to establish a business school ________ the master's degree in business administration.

A. representing B. offering C. presenting D. supplying

5. The directors' ________ to improve the comprehensive management in the company have been very effective.

A. efforts B. stocks C. options D. impressions

6. Eiffel Tower is a great tourist ________ drawing millions of visitors every year.

A. attention B. attraction C. appointment D. arrangement

7. Young people are not ________ to stand and look at works of art; they want art they can participate in.

A. conservative B. content C. confident D. generous

8. Kelly soon ________ Spanish when she went to live in Spain.

A. picked up B. keep up C. draw up D. catch up

9. Please ________ the relevant entry to find the correct word for the item concerned.

A. debate B. consult C. dispute D. bargain

10. If negotiations (谈判) fail, we shall have to ________ strike action.

A. seek for B. account for C. turned up D. resort to

11. He was criticized because he did not take immediate action when he was ________ that the submarine had sunk.

A. transformed B. reformed C. informed D. unformed

12. William Penn, the founder of Pennsylvania, ________ defended the right of every citizen to freedom of choice in religion.

A. peculiarly B. indifferently C. energetically D. inevitably

13. I must ________ to you that my delay in answering your letter is due mainly to laziness.

A. regret B. apologize C. confess D. complain

14. The computer revolution may well change society as ________ as did the Industrial Revolution.

A. likely B. insignificantly C. basically D. comparatively

15. A survey released last week has suggested that air pollution poses a threat to the continued ________ of this rare species.

A. existence B. presence C. absence D. reference

16. Allen's mother is very short. ________ his mother, he is tall and slim.

A. Dislike B. Unlike C. Alike D. Liking

17. The manager tells us that we are in ________ with several other companies for the contract.

A. announcement B. activity C. payment D. competition

18. The hopes, goals, fears and desires ________ widely between men and women, between the rich and the poor.

A. alter B. shift C. transfer D. vary

19. I'm sorry to ________ you, but can you direct me to the railway station?

A. interfere B. offend C. impress D. bother

20. I hope that you'll be more careful in typing the letter. Don't ________ anything.

A. lack B. withdraw C. omit D. leak

Vocabulary Test 2

1. Modern nursing practices not only ________ the recovery of the sick but also promote better health through preventive medicine.

A. permit B. hasten C. determine D. exclude

2. The long time disagreement of the couple finally ________ their divorce.

A. stepped up B. resulted in C. brought up D. set forth

3. Gun-control supporters claim that handgun owners are more ________ to shoot themselves or their loved ones to stop a criminal.

A. likely B. alike C. unlike D. like

4. Low pay and poor housing conditions cause great ________ among the intellectuals in the city.

A. disapproval B. disgrace C. distrust D. dissatisfaction

5. In short, every time the issue of family structure has been raised, the response has been first ________, then retreat, and finally silence.

A. dispute B. doubt C. solution D. conflict

6. Dr. Hill has just received an invitation from Washington University to join the ________ as a full-time professor.

A. committee B. association C. institution D. staff

7. If I become aware that a project is ________ in fun or meaning, I think seriously about dropping it.

A. lacking B. leaking C. licking D. locking

8. Yesterday I met an old friend of mine ________, which was really a pleasant surprise.

A. by means of B. by the way C. by chance D. by and large

9. He prepares ________ and contracts by which one person makes sure that another person will carry out his promises.

A. agreements B. documents C. instruments D. statements

10. Eye contact is important in relationships because it ________ to show intimacy, attention and influence.

A. assists B. promotes C. serves D. resorts

11. There are no specific rules concerning eye behavior except that it is considered rude to ________ especially at strangers.

A. stare B. look C. glance D. glimpse

12. Many doctors are still general practitioners, but the ________ is toward specialization in medicine.

A. tendency B. security C. rumor D. significance

13. Benard James was a scientist. To be ________, he was an ornithologist: he studied birds.

A. accurate B. correct C. exact D. precise

14. Professor Smith has been ________ to design a new course on international finance.

A. disappointed B. pointed C. appointed D. dispointed

15. ________ shyness and fear, they felt very uncomfortable meeting people even though they understood that their fear was not rational.

A. Thanks to B. Owing to C. As to D. Resort to

16. ________ temporary loneliness can be a normal healthy part of life, chronic (长期) loneliness can be a very sad and sometimes dangerous condition.

A. While B. As C. Since D. If

17. There was a courtyard (院子) that had steps leading down into the street, and there were no cars in ________.

A. scene B. sight C. view D. vision

18. But the young man stopped in front of him and put out his hand, saying in a ________ Italian accent.

A. considerable B. heavy C. serious D. weighty

19. Others hoped that by helping someone now, they ________ care when they became old and dependent.

A. deserved B. observed C. preserved D. reserved

20. Whatever the idealists may say, it is obvious that what ________ to the public is success.

A. differs B. matters C. signifies D. weights

Vocabulary Test 3

1. Even if we can reduce our birth ________ to 10%, it still means 13 million new babies every year.

A. pace B. level C. speed D. rate

2. The old French clock was ________ eleven as I went upstairs to bed.

A. beating B. striking C. ringing D. clapping

3. He went ahead with unpopular changes, ________ to hostile criticism.

A. opposed B. indifferent C. sensible D. contrary

4. When my boss said he would ________ me to another department, I was very pleased because I had been waiting for this change.

A. transfer B. interfere C. dismiss D. transform

5. We thought she would like to go. ________, she intends to stay where she is.

A. In the contrast B. In the comparison

C. For the contrary D. On the contrary

6. After two weeks' work on end I get ________ doing the same thing every day.

A. fed with B. fed up C. feed up in D. fed up with

7. John was so ________ in his book that he did not hear the doorbell ring.

A. participated　　B. occupied　　C. absorbed　　D. concentrated

8. Generally speaking, a conservative person is ________ to see any change.

A. reluctant　　B. satisfied　　C. radical　　D. content

9. Nothing must be allowed to ________ our plan for the weekend.

A. interfere with　　B. disturb on　　C. disturb with　　D. interfere on

10. The new manager explained to the staff that she hoped to ________ new procedures to save time and money.

A. manufacture　　B. establish　　C. control　　D. restore

11. I ________ to him for calling him so late.

A. excused　　B. apologized　　C. pardoned　　D. congratulated

12. They all agree that the color of that coat and tie don't ________.

A. suit　　B. mix　　C. match　　D. imitate

13. What you said reminds me ________ something I read in a book a few days ago.

A. of　　B. in　　C. with　　D. from

14. ________ the widening of the roads wherever possible in the city, it is still not adequate for the increasing volume of traffic.

A. Despite of　　B. Regardless　　C. In spite of　　D. Though

15. It is reported that all factories and mines will be ________ by government officials.

A. examined　　B. surveyed　　C. inspected　　D. investigated

16. He was ________ of having asked such a silly question.

A. sorry　　B. guilty　　C. miserable　　D. ashamed

17. When he retired from his job, the directors ________ him with a clock.

A. offered　　B. pleased　　C. presented　　D. satisfied

18. The actual cost of the building was such higher than our original ________.

A. estimate　　B. consideration　　C. judgment　　D. plan

19. Science has brought ________ many changes in our lives.

A. out　　B. about　　C. into　　D. forward

20. This year the factory ________ almost twice as many motor as it did last year.

A. turns down　　B. turns over　　C. turns to　　D. turns out

Vocabulary Test 4

1. When John declared that he would give up his job, all his colleagues ________ him in amazement.

A. noticed　　B. watched　　C. stared at　　D. glanced at

2. In your first days at the school you'll be given a test to help the teachers to ________ you to a class at your level.

A. locate　　B. assign　　C. deliver　　D. place

3. I left for office earlier than usual this morning ________ traffic jam.

A. in line with　　B. for the sake of　　C. in case of　　D. at the risk of

4. He is not ________ of learning English in five months.

A. possible　　B. likely　　C. able　　D. capable

5. The committee has met and it has ________ the proposal.

A. rejected　　B. declined　　C. refused　　D. denied

6. Say ________ what you mean and then there will be no misunderstanding.
A. frequently B. eventually C. necessarily D. precisely
7. If you want to telephone her, you'll have to ________ the number in the book.
A. look at B. look to C. look through D. look up
8. By the age of twenty-five he had ________ his ambition of becoming a pianist.
A. reached B. completed C. achieved D. obtained.
9. The woman was very tired after a day's work, and in no ________ for dancing.
A. mood B. emotion C. temper D. mold
10. Samuel is always cheerful, never ________ about his poor health and other troubles.
A. holding B. bringing C. complaining D. comparing
11. Blood ________ in the body.
A. circles B. cycles C. circulates D. rounds
12. Most train tickets are ________ for two or five days depending on the distance you travel.
A. effective B. valid C. efficient D. legal
13. A vast expanse of rice fields was laid ________ before us as soon as we got off the bus.
A. down B. off C. out D. open
14. The company had to put forward a (n) ________ that lay-offs be considered.
A. proposal B. purpose C. setback D. advertisement
15. This boy often dreams ________ a happier life on some other planet.
A. with B. of C. for D. in
16. They had an infinite ________ for patience.
A. ability B. capability C. capacity D. energy
17. Let's hang up some paintings or pictures on these ________ walls. Then it will look nice.
A. bare B. empty C. blank D. vacant
18. This fire extinguisher is to be used only in ________.
A. a crisis B. an emergency C. a hurry D. haste
19. The police investigation discovered that three young men were ________ in the robbery.
A. caught B. involved C. connected D. tightened
20. When John was elected president, his country was facing an ________ crisis.
A. economic B. economical C. economy D. economics

Vocabulary Test 5

1. The top post in the Olympic Games Bidding Committee is still ________.
A. empty B. vacant C. vain D. bare
2. What do you think is the most ________ time to find him at home?
A. alike B. liking C. like D. likely
3. Because she had an important appointment with Prof. Smith, she ________ the invitation with thanks.
A. refused B. rejected C. declined D. repelled
4. It is possible to ________ two completely opposite conclusions from this set of facts.
A. imply B. suggest C. draw D. hint
5. All human communication experts agree that we use both verbal and nonverbal methods to ________ messages to each other.

A. transfer B. move C. shift D. convey

6. A huge military force is maintained to protect citizens ________ enemies.

A. for B. of C. against D. with

7. While we usually think ________ the library as a place with books, it is really a source of much more.

A. of B. about C. in D. for

8. Smoke from factories pollutes the air of industrialized areas and the ________ areas of the countryside.

A. surrounding B. building C. considering D. improving

9. You did not say that you were present, but words ________ that you were.

A. applied B. implied C. replied D. complied

10. It is ________ that we keep discussing this issue, listening to different viewpoints, deciding what we believe.

A. virtue B. violent C. visual D. vital

11. Reynolds ________ that the new model improves on the old one in some obvious ways.

A. pronounces B. talks C. claims D. inquires

12. The doctor's task was to get this couple to acknowledge that a ________ existed and had been there for most of their fifteen-year marriage.

A. quarrel B. conflict C. convenience D. ignorance

13. The changed IELTS oral test since July 1 this year ________ three-main parts (oral interview, free talk and discussion), which will ________ candidates' fluency, coherence, vocabulary, grammar and pronunciation.

A. comprises; measure B. is comprised; reveal

C. is made up of; prove D. composes of; test

14. We must get rid of this large table, for it ________ too much room.

A. takes out B. takes up C. takes over D. takes on

15. The news, though not wholly bad, was so ________ that I could no longer concentrate on my work.

A. disastrous B. anxious C. regretful D. disturbing

16. With the gradual improvement of transportation and communications, farmers have now had easier ________ to cities and towns.

A. access B. reach C. contact D. touch

17. Scientists claim that air pollution causes a ________ in world's average air temperature.

A. declarer B. decline C. deficit D. density

18. Nuclear Power's danger to health, safety and even life itself can be ________ in one word: radiation.

A. made up B. taken up C. put up D. summed up

19. Did you notice the ________ on the man's face when he heard that Kino had found the pearl of the world?

A. appearance B. expression C. description D. outlook

20. Those who support the "nature" side of the conflict believe that our ________ and behavior patterns are largely determined by biological factors.

A. personalities B. characteristics
C. abilities D. qualifications

Vocabulary Test 6

1. In the second semester I chose Japanese in ________ to French as my second foreign language.
A. conference B. inference C. preference D. reference

2. The pupils are told that they can ________ success if they work really hard.
A. get B. achieve C. gain D. acquire

3. Mr. Robertson was already in the bath so he did not ________ to answer the phone.
A. bother B. offend C. deserve D. dispose

4. His answer was so confusing that I could hardly make any ________ of it at all.
A. sense B. understanding C. meaning D. instance

5. Last night, the electric lamps went out so we had to ________ candles to light the room.
A. lead to B. contribute to C. amount to D. resort to

6. There are a large number of reference books ________ to you; you can make use of them at any time you like.
A. desirable B. favorable C. noticeable D. available

7. I know nothing about the car accident; it happened ________ to my arrival.
A. cautions B. curious C. previous D. conscious

8. It is often difficult to find an ________ example to illustrate the usage of certain expressions.
A. accurate B. adequate C. appropriate D. approximate

9. We are lucky enough to have ________ supplies to last through the winter.
A. ancient B. efficient C. sufficient D. proficient

10. As we all know, Marxism ________ the importance of theory because it can guide action.
A. organizes B. emphasizes C. criticizes D. memorizes

11. The Chinese community there, consisting of 67,000 ________, is the largest concentration of Chinese outside Asia.
A. visitors B. passengers C. adults D. inhabitants

12. He ________ that a combination of recent oil discoveries and the advance of new technology will lead to a decline in the price of crude oil.
A. predicts B. compels C. arranges D. disputes

13. Some students chose to write a term paper, ________ chose to take the final exam.
A. somebody else B. the other C. and others D. but another

14. Until recently, Internet marketing activities have ________ strategies to pull customers into sites.
A. figured out B. let alone C. approved of D. focused on

15. Over the past century, ________, physical work has become easier, and work has become less physical.
A. as a whole B. in generally C. as well as D. in spite

16. Researchers around the world are discovering that music can help healing in a ________ of ways.
A. variety B. wonder C. type D. thousand

17. Customers who buy suitcases are likely to be looking for other items they might need for traveling too, ________ travel alarms and irons.
A. as such B. such as C. as to D. to as

18. Today in the U. S. there are many charitable organizations which ________ in helping the weary travelers.

A. specialize　B. engage　C. operate　D. manage

19. "Sorry, there are no tickets ________ for tomorrow's performance," the ticket officer said politely.

A. preferable　B. considerable　C. favorable　D. available

20. A lot of people were ready to work long hours because high unemployment meant that they could easily be ________.

A. separated　B. appointed　C. transferred　D. replaced

Vocabulary Test 7

1. When she heard from the hospital that her father had died, she ________ into tears.

A. burst　B. went　C. exploded　D. fell

2. Doctors suggest that he should try to make ________ for his loss of sleep by going to bed early.

A. away　B. out　C. up　D. with

3. To tell you the truth, what ________ to me in the papers is the book and the film reviews.

A. attracts　B. calls　C. interests　D. appeals

4. Tom hasn't been working lately; he won't get ________ his examinations.

A. off　B. on　C. crossD. through

5. Barbara ________ to get very impatient if you ask her more than two questions.

A. tends　B. attends　C. intends　D. intent

6. He didn't want to go to the cinema but they begged so hard that he ________ and went with them.

A. gave up　B. gave in　C. gave out　D. gave over

7. There are so many inconveniences that have to be ________ when you are camping.

A. put down　B. put up with　C. put aside　D. put away

8. Will you take my previous experience into ________ when you fix my salary?

A. possession　B. account　C. mind　D. amount

9. The suggestions put forward by the workers to improve their working conditions were ________ by the factory owner.

A. turned out　B. turned down　C. turned over　D. turned off

10. The price of beer ________ from 50 cent to $4 per liter during the summer season.

A. altered　B. ranged　C differed　D. changed

11. There is real concern that food supplies will not be ________ to feed the increasing word population.

A. satisfactory　B. sufficient　C. equal　D. convenient

12. When he realized the police had spotted him, the man ________ the exit as quickly as possible.

A. made off　B. made out　C. made for　D. made toward

13. The taxi driver pulled up his car ________ a pedestrian waving to him.

A. at the interview of　B. at the eye of

C. at the eyesight of　D. at the sight of

14. The match was canceled because most of the members ________ a match without a standard court.

A. objected to having　B. were objected to have

C. objected to have　D. were objected to having

15. It was the old- world politeness that ________ me to go on with the unbearable conversation

with him.

A. persuaded B. obliged C. strained D. upset

16. Those gifts of rare books that were given to us were deeply ________.

A. appealed B. applied C. appreciated D. approved

17. Herman's success is due to his hard work and his ability to ________ plans which will get work done efficiently.

A. fulfill B. formulate C. approve D. flourish

18. All experts agree that the most important consideration with diet drugs is carefully ________ the risks and benefits.

A. assessing B. valuing C. estimating D. weighing

19. Shopping for a new swimsuit is one of my least ________ activities, because I almost always get salesclerk with a sick sense of humor.

A. favorable B. favorite C. beneficial D. benevolent

20. We can't afford to let the situation get worse. We have to take ________ to put it right.

A. decisions B. advantages C. sides D. steps

Vocabulary Test 8

1. I was about to turn in my resignation when news came that the CEO had died of a stroke, and ________ I decided to stay on.

A. under the circumstances B. with the circumstances

C. under the cases D. with the cases

2. It is generally accepted that industrial growth and urbanization（都市化）often go ________.

A. now and then B. hand in hand C. day and night D. heart and soul

3. Eventually, with ________ and hard work, the blind, deaf-mute girl learned to speak.

A. distance B. curiosity C. persistence D. anxiety

4. ________ you have begun to answer the question of why you are in college, you can go on to choose the kind of student you want to become.

A. Once B. Though C. Even D. So

5. People from all walks of life are learning English so that they can work ________ volunteers for the 2008 Beijing Olympics.

A. of B. at C. to D. as

6. They are faced with a big problem of how to get the project ________ by the Ministry of Education.

A. approved B. disapproved C. proved D. unproved

7. College freshmen have difficulty ________ to dormitory life. This is particularly true of those who are the only children in their families.

A. adopting B. adapting C. abandoning D. adhering

8. Never use that kind of ________ when you speak to students. They don't like to be lectured on.

A. tune B. voice C. tone D. sound

9. The railway will be further ________ to link with the trans-Siberia railway in Russia.

A. expanded B. exported C. exacted D. extended

10. Time is running ________. The international community must take immediate action.

A. away B. over C. down D. out

11. At first I felt a bit awkward. But as time ________, I felt more at ease. There people seemed just

like my own folks.

A. went by　　B. went away　　C. went through　　D. went down

12. As soon as she got home, Mrs. Smith ________ preparing dinner for the whole family.

A. set to　　B. set about　　C. set out　　D. set aside

13. In order to ________ without interpreters with the English-speaking visitors, officials at ministerial levels are learning English.

A. accompany　　B. confuse　　C. remark　　D. communicate

14. The survey shows that the ________ of today's college students are ready to work for the common good.

A. majority　　B. disappointment　　C. committee　　D. interviewers

15. They say that I should be ________ for the defeat of our basketball match. I think it is unfair.

A. aware　　B. clear　　C. responsible　　D. satisfied

16. In fact, according to Adam, the desire to ________ one's material life is an absolutely necessary key to economic and social development.

A. improve　　B. extend　　C. possess　　D. encounter

17. Although both Diogenes and Alexander lived in ancient Greece, their stories are ________ out of date.

A. by all means　　B. by this means

C. by means of　　D. by no means

18. He believes that our worldly possessions have no true value and ________ take away our freedom and happiness, and turn us into slaves.

A. attend to　　B. pretend to　　C. intend to　　D. tend to

19. It is largely ________ all these dramatic contrasts that we are left with such a deep impression of these two characters in the story.

A. due to　　B. previous to　　C. close to　　D. inclined to

20. In other ________, he or she helps people get out of trouble as well as helping those who are already in trouble.

A. expressions　　B. phrases　　C. terms　　D. words

Vocabulary Test 9

1. What is government's ________ to the proposal of tunnel across the river?

A. mood　　B. emotion　　C. attitude　　D. feeling

2. Most broadcasters maintain that TV has been unfairly criticized and argue that the power of the medium is ________.

A. granted　　B. implied　　C. exaggerated　　D. remedied

3. What number should I dial to get the ________ if I want to ask for someone's telephone number?

A. secretary　　B. official　　C. clerk　　D. operator

4. When people become unemployed, it is idleness which is often worse than ________ of wages.

A. lick　　B. luck　　C. lack　　D. lank

5. Although her marriage was very unhappy, Mrs. Stephens remained with her husband ________ the children.

A. for the sake of　　B. on behalf of

C. in place of　　D. in case of

6. The manager's secretary told me that the firm could not ________ to pay such large salaries.

A. affect B. afloat C. afraid D. afford

7. The company announces with ________ that prices have to be increased due to the rise of cost.

A. sorrow B. regret C. sympathy D. guilty

8. There is a tough ________ between Ohio State and the University of Michigan for the Big Football Championships.

A. difference B. limitation C. competition D. argument

9. He is ________ about his chances of wining a gold medal in the Olympics to be held next year.

A. optimistic B. optional C. outstanding D. obvious

10. The leaders of the two countries are planning their summit meeting with a ________ to maintain and develop good ties.

A. strategy B. standpoint C. promise D. priority

11. The farm minister ________ an emergency meeting in Luxembourg in hopes of easing the world-wide "mad cow" panic.

A. reserved B. scheduled C. verify D. consult

12. All the staff members of the department make enthusiastic ________ to clean up the hall for the coming Christmas party.

A. efforts B. concerns C. hostilities D. construction

13. He made a ________ with his wife "You take care of the children and I'll cook."

A. battery B. bargain C. basket D. barrel

14. I'd ________ his reputation with other farmers and business people in the community, and then make a decision about whether or not to approve a loan.

A. take into account B. account for

C. make up for D. make out

15. In his speech he ________ to the great help the club received from supporters.

A. referred B. mentioned C. expressed D. remarked

16. Sometimes, the messages are ________ through deliberate and conscious gestures; otherwise, our bodies talk without our even knowing.

A. conveyed B. confronted C. confessed D. concluded

17. Many observers believe that the country will remain in a state of chaos if it fails to solve its ________ food shortage problem.

A. separate B. sedate C. semantic D. severe

18. Factors leading to the crisis included poor regulation, ________, cheating in the industry and competition from other types of financial firms.

A. mismanagement B. misprint C. misplacement D. misquotation

19. It is said that an immediate review of what you have learned will help make your knowledge ________.

A. interesting B. useful C. permanent D. deep

20. The words of his old teacher left a lasting ________ on his mind. He is still influenced by them.

A. motion B. emotion C. impression D. expression

Vocabulary Test 10

1. We all ________ him for his superior performance in the competition, and it's entirely within our expectation that he won the prize.

A. require B. admire C. acquire D hire

2. One of the questions is how to express our ________ to the hostess.

A. altitude B. attitude C. gratitude D. attribute

3. The bank manager asked his assistant if it was possible for him to ________ the investment plan within a week.

A. pick out B. set out C. work out D. make out

4. The policeman stopped him when he was driving home last night and ________ him of speeding.

A. charged B. blamed C. frightened D. accused

5. He ________ suggestion to the manager, who, after discussing it with other members, decided to accept it.

A. put forward B. put off C. put on D. put up

6. Our company decided to ________ the contract because a number of the conditions in it had not been met.

A. approve B. consume C. cancel D resist

7. To tell you the truth, it never ________ to me that the clue to the problem lies in such a simple experiment.

A. occurred B. meant C. recollected D. devoted

8. George always thinks the food we eat is ________ for a lot of common disease, and I think he is right.

A. reliable B. invisible C. capable D. responsible

9. I hope all the precautions against air pollution, ________ suggested by the local government, will be seriously considered here.

A. while B. although C. since D. as

10. ________, I never stay out late on a week night, because I have to get up early every morning.

A. As far as B. As a rule C. As opposed to D. As well

11. John soon received promotion, for his superiors realized that he was a man of ________ ability.

A. considering B. considerable C. considerate D. considered

12. It is reported that Parliament has passed an act forbidding the killing of ________ animals.

A. rare B. row C. strange D. peculiar

13. ________ the help of the family, we would not have the chance to visit the Great Wall.

A. Besides B. Regardless of C. But for D. Despite

14. They lack the kind of structure that ________ us to divide human utterance into words.

A. encourage B. enable C. enforce D. ensure

15. The great tit (山雀) has about twenty different calls, ________ in human language the number of possible utterance is limitless.

A. since B. anyhow C. somewhat D. whereas

16. Students can learn the right answers by heart in class, and yet never ________ them with their 68 working models of the world.

A. combine B. compare C. communicate D. command

17. The gold medal was ________ to Mr. Smith for his excellent performance in the play.

A. distributed B. awarded C. inspired D. charged

18. Now commercial farmers have become increasingly specialized so that almost everything consumed on most farms is now bought from outside sources ________ home-grown.

A. other than B. more than C. less than D. rather than

19. There are some disadvantages in living in the country, but ________, we like it.

A. nevertheless B. above all C. in all D. on the whole

20. When we asked him about the accident, he did not seem to have any ________ of what had happened.

A. reaction B. concept C. memory D. knowledge

Keys:

Vocabulary Test 1				
	1-5 C C B B A	6-10 B B A B D	11-15 C C C C A	16-20 B D D D C
Vocabulary Test 2				
	1-5 B B A D A	6-10 D A C A C	11-15 A A C C B	16-20 A B B A B
Vocabulary Test 3				
	1-5 D B B A D	6-10 D C A A B	11-15 B C A C C	16-20 D C A B D
Vocabulary Test 4				
	1-5 C B C D A	6-10 D D C A C	11-15 C B C A B	16-20 B B B B A
Vocabulary Test 5				
	1-5 B D C C D	6-10 C A A B D	11-15 C B A B D	16-20 A B D B A
Vocabulary Test 6				
	1-5 C B A A D	6-10 D C C C B	11-15 D A C D A	16-20 A B B D D
Vocabulary Test 7				
	1-5 A C D D A	6-10 B B B B B	11-15 B C D A B	16-20 C B D B D
Vocabulary Test 8				
	1-5 A B C A D	6-10 A B C D D	11-15 A B D A C	16-20 A D C A D
Vocabulary Test 9				
	1-5 C C D C A	6-10 D B C A C	11-15 B A B A A	16-20 A D A C C
Vocabulary Test 10				
	1-5 B C C D A	6-10 C A D D B	11-15 B A C B D	16-20 A B D D C

For the want of a nail the shoe was lost,
For the want of a shoe the horse was lost,
For the want of a horse the rider was lost,
For the want of a rider the battle was lost,
For the want of a battle the kingdom was lost,
And all for the want of horse-shoe nail.
——— Benjamin Franklin

因为少了一颗马蹄钉而掉了马蹄铁,
因为掉了一块马铁蹄而失去了一匹马,
因为失去了一匹马而缺了一个骑兵,
因为缺了一个骑兵而输了一场战役,
因为输了一场战役而丢了整个国家,
悔之晚矣！全是当初少了那颗马蹄钉...
——本杰明·富兰克林

第五章

语法、词汇综合练习及详解

Test 1

1. As long as you ________ the money back promptly, I'll lend it to you with pleasure.
   A. return　B. will return　C. have returned　D. returned
2. I am considering ________ to the Yellow Mountain. Do you consider it a good idea ________ here?
   A. going; to go　B. to go; to go　C. going; going　D. To go; going
3. I'd appreciate ________ these letters.
   A. you to mail　B. you mail　C. your mailing　D. you would mail
4. ________ to develop more accurate methods of economic forecasting is generally recognized.
   A. There is need　B. That a need　C. The need being　D. The need
5. If you ________ that late movie last night, you wouldn't be sleepy now.
   A. hadn't watched　B. didn't watch
   C. haven't watched　D. wouldn't have watched
6. The type of stories my mother told me in my childhood ________ again.
   A. have never been heard　B. has never been heard
   C. have never heard　D. has never heard
7. It is because English is useful ________.
   A. why we study it hard　B. what we study hard
   C. that we study it hard　D. which we study hard
8. You are getting too old for football. You'd better ________ tennis instead.
   A. take in　B. take up　C. take for　D. take over
9. What ________ to him is whether job allows him to pursue his studies.
   A. applies　B. happens　C. refers　D. matters
10. He said that very clearly so that nobody was in any ________ about what was meant.
    A. doubt　B. consideration　C. question　D. wonder
11. ________ economically, one tin of oil will last at least three months.
    A. To use　B. To be used　C. Using　D. Used
12. Some members of the staff couldn't handle Murray's condition, ________ hard they tried.
    A. as　B. although　C. when　D. even if
13. The price of fruit has increased recently ________ the price of vegetables has gone down.
    A. when　B. whether　C. whereas　D. otherwise
14. This kind of glasses manufactured by experienced craftsmen ________ comfortably.
    A. is worn　B. wears　C. wearing　D. are worn
15. There were two small rooms in the beach house, ________ served as a kitchen.

A. the smaller of which B. the smaller of them
C. the smaller of whose D. the smaller of that

16. She ought to stop work; she has a headache because she ________ too long.
A. has been reading B. had read
C. is reading D. read

17. Mike's uncle insists ________ in this hotel.
A. staying not B. not to stay
C. that he would not stay D. that he not stay

18. The reason Beethoven went away to the country is ________ he was gradually going deaf.
A. that B. because C. since D. as

19. So little ________ that the neighbors could not settle their differences.
A. they agreed B. agreed did they
C. did they agree D. they did agree

20. Anyone is entitled to such benefit, ________ of age or sex.
A. instead B. in spite C. in case D. regardless

21. ________ from the hilltop, the lake scenery is beyond description.
A. To see B. Seeing C. Having seen D. Seen

22. ________ for your laziness, you could have finished the assignment by now.
A. Had not it been B. Weren't it
C. It were not D. Had it not been

23. It was very ________ of you not to play the piano while I was having a sleep.
A. considerable B. considerate C. considered D. considering

24. He liked the painting very much, which cost him $1,000. However, he would gladly have paid ________ for it.
A. as much twice B. much as twice
C. twice as much D. as twice much

25. It was to save the child ________ he got drowned.
A. when B. while C. as D. that

26. ________ a certain doubt among the students as to the necessity of the word.
A. It existed B. There existed C. They had D. there had

27. Everyone can borrow this dictionary ________ he keeps it clean, otherwise he will have to pay for the damage.
A. so that B. as far as C. as long as D. as soon as

28. I regret ________ you that you are to be dismissed from next week.
A. to inform B. informing C. being informed D. to be informed

29. The chair looks rather hard, but it is very comfortable to ________.
A. sit B. sit on C. be sat D. he sat on

30. We ________ for her because she never came.
A. needn't wait B. needn't have waited
C. mustn't wait D. can't have waited

1. A 本题考查动词时态。在时间、条件、让步状语从句中，动词要使用一般现在时表将来。本句意思：只要你能很快还钱，我就乐意借给你。

2. A　本题考查动名词和动词不定式的使用。consider 后面要跟动名词做宾语，动词不定式在这里是真正的宾语，而 it 是形式宾语。本句意思：我正在考虑去黄山，你认为去那儿是个好主意吗？

3. C　本题考查动名词复合结构的使用。由于 appreciate 是及物动词，后面要跟动名词短语做宾语，动名词的逻辑主语要用宾格或所有格。本句意思：我会很感激你邮寄这些信的。

4. D　本题考查不定式的使用方法。在本句中，动词不定式短语是 the need 的后置定语，所以此空格处要填名词。本句意思：发展更精确的经济预报方法的需求是被公认的。

5. A　本题考查虚拟语气。本句是混合型的（错综时间）虚拟语气，逗号前与过去事实相反用 had done，逗号后与现在事实相反用 would do。本句意思：如果你昨晚没看那个晚场电影的话，你现在就不会困。

6. B　本题考查主谓一致。由 the kind，the type 后加名词引起的主语，谓语动词要用单数，表示一类、一种。本题还考查了动词的被动形式。本句意思：儿时妈妈给我讲的这种故事从来没有再听过。

7. C　本题考查强调句型。It is/was + 被强调部分 + that。本句意思：正是因为英语有用我们才努力学习它。

8. B　本题考查动词 take 的短语辨析。take in “接受，接待，吸收，理解”；take up “拿起，开始从事，继续，占据”；take for “认为，以为”；take over “把……从某一地带到另一地，接收，接管”。本句意思：踢足球你年龄太大了，最好你还是打网球。

9. D　本题考查词义辨析。apply “申请”；happen “发生”；refer “指的是”；matter “要紧”。本句意思：对他来说要紧的是他的工作是否能让他继续从事研究。

10. A　本题考查词义辨析。doubt “疑惑”；consideration “考虑”；question “问题”；wonder “惊奇，惊愕”。本句意思：他把那事说得非常清楚，所以没人怀疑它的用意。

11. D　本题考查分词作状语。由于分词与句子主语之间是被动关系，因此选项应选被动式。本句意思：如果节约使用的话，一罐石油可以持续使用三个月。

12. A　该题考查 as 引导的让步状语从句。本句意思：尽管他们努力尝试了，但有些员工依然不能处理 Murray 的情况。

13. C　本题考查表达转折的过渡词。whereas 意为“然而……”。本句意思：近期水果的价格上涨了而蔬菜的价格却下降了。

14. B　本题考查动词 wear 的使用。这里物作主语，wear 是系动词“穿、戴起来”的意思。本句意思：有经验的技工生产的这种眼镜戴起来很舒适。

15. A　本题考查定语从句。在定语从句中，起限定作用的介词后面要接 which。本句意思：在海滩的房子里有两个小屋子，小的那个当厨房。

16. A　本题考查时态。现在完成进行时，表示动作已经发生并持续到现在，在说话的同时还没有停止，有持续下去的趋势。本句意思：她应当停止工作，因为她已经阅读太长时间了，所以头痛。

17. D　本题考查单词 insist 的用法。insist 后面若跟动名词，需要加介词 on/up；若跟从句，则是特殊的虚拟句，从句里的动词应使用 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略。本句意思：麦克的叔叔坚持不让他待在宾馆里。

18. A　本题考查表语从句。这基本上是个固定搭配：the reason is that…本句意思：贝多芬离开这个国家来的原因是他逐渐耳聋了。

19. C　本题考查部分倒装结构。so + 形容词或副词被前置于句首时，句子要使用部分倒装

结构。本句意思：邻居们达成一致的地方太少了，这样就不能解决他们之间的分歧。

20. D 本题考查介词短语。instead of“代替”；in spite of“让步”；in case“万一”，regardless“不管，不顾”。本句意思：不论年龄和性别，每个人都被赋予这样的利益。

21. D 本题考查分词短语作句首状语。由于湖的景色是被看，see 与句子主语之间是被动关系，所以用 seen。本句意思：从山顶上看，湖的景色美得无以言表。

22. D 本题考查虚拟语气。由 by now 可知本题的虚拟语气是与过去事实相反，所以 if 从句用 had done，且 if 省略，had 提前。本句意思：要不是因为你懒惰，现在你就已经完成任务了。

23. B 本题考查形近的形容词词义辨析。considerable“相当大（或多）的，值得考虑的，相当可观的”；considerate 用来形容人，“考虑周到的，体贴的”；considered“考虑过，经过仔细考虑的”；considering 用作介词语或副词“考虑到……，鉴于……”。本句意思：当我睡觉时你不弹钢琴，真是非常体贴。

24. C 本题考查倍数的表达。倍数 + as + 形容词/副词 + as + 比较对象。该题是省略了 as + 比较对象。本句意思：他非常喜欢这幅画，这花了他一千美元，然而，他为之宁可花两倍的价钱。

25. B 本题考查强调句型结构 It is/was + 被强调部分 + that…本句意思：是为了救那个孩子，他才淹死的。

26. B 使用 there be 和 there exists 句式均可。本句意思：对于这个单词的必要性，学生们存在着相当的疑惑。

27. C 本题考查词组辨析。so that“于是，因此”，引导结果状语从句；as far as“远到，直到……为止”；as soon as“一……就……”；引导时间状语从句的只有 as long as“只要……”表达条件。本句意思：只要能使之保持清洁，谁都可以借这本词典，否则借书的人就要赔偿损失。

28. A 本题考查 regret 后面跟不定式和动名词作宾语语义上的区别。regret doing sth. 是对已经发生过的事表示后悔；而 regret to do sth. 是对即将要发生的事表示遗憾。本句意思：我很遗憾地告诉你，从下周起你就被解雇了。

29. B 本题考查动词不定式放在形容词后面用主动形式表达被动，不定式和前面的名词构成实际上的动宾关系。本句意思：这个椅子看起来相当硬，但坐上去却非常舒适。

30. B 本题考查情态动词完成式的用法。情态动词 needn't have done 表示过去本来没有必要做但做了的事情。本句意思：我们本来没必要等她的，因为她压根没来。

Test 2

1. My sister is used to ________ with all the windows open.

A. sleep　　B. have slept　　C. sleeping　　D. slept

2. His English is very gooD. He can speak English better than ________ in his grade.

A. any one　　B. the one　　C. anyone else　　D. other student

3. ________ is known to the world, Mark Twain is a great American writer.

A. That　　B. It　　C. Which　　D. As

4. ________ leaves the room last should turn off the lights.

A. Whoever　　B. Anyone　　C. Who　　D. Whomever

5. The current situation urged that more attention ________ to problems less studied by city government.

A. be given B. should give C. paid D. should pay

6. It was quite some time ________ the president managed to save his firm from near bankruptcy.

A. until B. when C. that D. before

7. It is necessary that a person ________ exercises every day if he wishes to be healthy.

A. does B. did C. do D. takes

8. Don't have your children ________ for hours doing their homework in ________ dark a room.

A. sitting; so B. sit; such C. to be sitting; so D. to sit; such

9. Professor Smith ________ be in New York because I met him in the town just now.

A. can't B. might not C. may not D. may

10. The house needs ________, but they plan to wait until next spring to do it.

A. paint B. to paint C. painting D. be painted

11. A smart appearance makes a ________ impression at an interview.

A. favorite B. favorable C. favoring D. favored

12. It is recommended that passengers ________ smoke during the flight.

A. not B. need not C. could not D. would not

13. The price of beer ________ from 50 cents to $4 per liter during the summer season.

A. altered B. separated C. ranged D. differed

14. As we all know, flesh air, nutritious food and exercise ________ to better health.

A. attribute B. contribute C. add D. distribute

15. He failed in this exam, ________ proves that he wasn't working hard enough.

A. that B. it C. what D. which

16. ________ with the size of the whole earth, the highest mountain does not seem high at all.

A. Compared B. Compare C. Comparing D. While comparing

17. After the flood, the villagers are trying their best to get thing back to ________.

A. ordinary B. normal A. common D. usual

18. The murderer was brought in, with his hands ________ behind his back.

A. being tied B. having tied C. to be tied D. tied

19. To be flank, I really prefer the former program to the ________.

A. late B. later C. lately D. latter

20. We received 400 applications ________ the job.

A. on B. of C. in D. for

21. This hotel ________ $60 for a single room with bath.

A. pays B. costs C. prices D. charges

22. ________ the content is concerned, the book is worth reading.

A. As long as B. As far as C. As well as D. As good as

23. He hoped the firm would ________ him to the Paris branch.

A. exchange B. transmit C. transfer D. remove

24. Not only you and I but Peter, the top student in our grade, ________ not able to solve the problem.

A. are B. were C. am D. is

25. You should have to ________ your way of thinking to the new life style.

A. adept B. adopt C. adapt D. adjust

26. Tom is the only one of the students who ________ to Shanghai.

A. have gone B. have been C. has been D. had gone

27. The European Union countries were once worried that they would not have ________ supplies of petroleum.

A. sufficient B. proficient C. efficient D. potential

28. This is ________ the first time you have been late.

A. by all means B. by no means C. in some cases D. in any case

29. Not having a good command of English can be a serious ________ preventing you from achieving your goals.

A. obstacle B. fault C. offense D. distress

30. He thinks he is superior ________ his classmates because his father is an important person.

A. than B. to C. of D. with

1. C 本题考查 used to do sth. 和 be used to doing sth. 的用法。前者表示“过去曾做过某事”而后者表示“习惯于做某事”。本句意思：我妹妹习惯睡觉时所有的窗户都开着。

2. C 在本句中，A 项和 B 项不符合逻辑，应不包含他在内的其他任何人。D 项没有使用复数。本句意思：他的英语非常好，在他的年级里，他讲的英语比别的任何人都好。

3. D 本题考查 as 引导的非限定性定语从句，as 指代逗号后面的整个句子“Mark Twain is a great American writer”。本句意思：众所周知，马克吐温是一位伟大的美国作家。

4. A 本题考查 whoever 引导的主语从句，whoever 又在主语从句中作主语，所以一定用主格，whoever 表示任何一个人，无论是谁。本句意思：无论是谁最后离开屋子都要把灯关上。

5. A 本题考查特殊虚拟语气。表示敦促或建议的一些词如：advise，suggest，recommend 等后跟 that 从句要使用虚拟语气，即 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略。本句意思：近期形势敦促要对市政府很少研究的问题给予关注。

6. D 本题考查 before 引导的时间状语从句，before 表示“趁着还没发生；在……之前；直到……才”。本句意思：总裁花了不少时间才将他濒临破产的公司拯救出来。

7. C 本题考查特殊虚拟语气。表示重要性、必要性的形容词，如：necessary 后跟 that 从句要使用虚拟语气，即 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略。本句意思：如果一个人希望健康的话，每天都锻炼是有必要的。

8. A 本题考查 have sb. do sth. 和 have sb. doing sth. 的区别。两个短语都是“让某人干某事”，但前者做的事不具有持续性，而后者做的事具有持续性，表示“让某人一直做，总是做……”。而且 such 之后要跟名词，so 之后要跟形容词。本句意思：别让你的孩子们在这样暗的屋子里数小时地一直做作业。

9. C 本题考查情态动词完成式表对过去情况的推测。否定的推测要用 can't/couldn't have done。may/might 不能用于否定的推测，must 也不能。本句意思：史密斯教授不可能在纽约，因为刚才我在镇上见到他了。

10. C 本题考查动名词主动表被动的使用。物作主语，谓语动词为 need，require，want，deserve，be worth 时，后面要用动名词作宾语。本句意思：房子需要刷油漆，但他们计划等到明年春天再干。

11. B 本题考查形近词辨析。favorite“特别喜爱的”；favorable“赞成的，有利的”；favored“有天赋的”。本句意思：小巧精明的外表，在面试时，会给别人留下很好的印象。

12. A 本题考查语虚拟语气。在结构“it is + *adj.*（表建议，命令，请求……）+ that”句型中，从句用虚拟语气谓语动词用 should + 动词原形，should 可省略。本句意思：建议乘客在

飞行期间不能抽烟。

13. C 本题考查近义动词辨析。alter“改变，变化”；separate“分离，隔离”；range“排列，变化（在一定范围内）”；differ“不同”。本句意思：夏季每升啤酒的价格由 50 美分到 4 美元不等。

14. B 本题考查动词短语辨析。attribute to“归因于”；contribute“导致……”；add to“加，增加”；distribute to“分配，分送”。本句意思：众所周知，新鲜的空气、营养丰富的食品和锻炼对身体有好处。

15. D 本题考查定语从句。非限制性定语从句，不能用 that，而是要用 which 来引导。本句意思：他没通过考试，这一点说明他学习不够刻苦。

16. A 本题考查分词短语作状语。compare 引导的分词短语在句中作伴随状语，在本题中，compare 与其逻辑主语 mountain 之间构成被动关系。本句意思：和整个地球的大小相比，最高山脉似乎也没那么高了。

17. B 本题考查形容词辨析。ordinary“普通的，平常的”；normal“正常的，正规的”；common“普通的，普遍的”；usual“通常的，惯常的”。本句意思：洪水过后，村民尽最大努力让一切回归正常。

18. D 本题考查独立主格结构：分词逻辑主语 + 过去分词。本句意思：谋杀者被带了进来，手被绑在了背后。

19. D 本题考查近形词词义辨析。late“晚的”；later“较晚的，后来”；lately“最近，近来”；latter“后者”。本句意思：坦白地说，比起后者我更喜欢前一个节目。

20. D 考查固定搭配。apply for“申请”，其名词形式 application 也与 for 搭配。本句意思：这份工作我们收到了 400 份申请书。

21. D 本题考查近义动词词义辨析。pay“支付”；cost“花费，成本为……”；price“标价，定价”；charge“要价，收费”。本句意思：这家旅馆一间带卫生间的单人房要价 60 美元。

22. B 本题考查固定搭配。as far as... is concerned 意为“就……而言”。本句意思：就内容而言，这本书值得一读。

23. C 本题考查动词词义辨析。transfer 意为“调动工作”；remove 意为“移动，去除”；exchange 意为“交换，交易，互换，交流”；transmit 意为“传送，传染，使传播”。本句意思：他希望公司把他调动到巴黎分部去。

24. D 本题考查主谓一致。not only.... but also... 连接主语时，谓语动词遵循“就近原则”，依据 but also 之后的单词来确定谓语的单复数形式。这样的规则还适用于 neither... nor...；either... or...。本句意思：不仅是你我，就是比特，全年级最好的学生，也解不了这道难题。

25. C 本题考查形近词辨析。adapt“使适合，使适应”；adjust“校正，校准”，adopt 是及物动词，意为“收养，领养；采用，采取”；adept“熟练的，擅长的”。本句意为：你应该让你的思维方式适应新的生活。

26. C 本题考查定语从句中谓语动词的单复数形式。“one of + 复数名词”结构前有 the only 修饰，则定语从句的动词形式使用单数形式。本题意为：汤姆是唯一一个去过上海的学生。

27. A 本题考查形容词词义辨析。sufficient 意为“充分的，足够的”；potential 意为“潜在的，可能的”；proficient 意为“熟练的，精通的”；efficient 意为“有效率的，能干的”。本句意思：欧盟国家曾经担心他们会没有充足的石油供给。

28. B 本题考查短语辨析。by no means“决不”；by all means“尽一切办法，一定”；in any case“无论如何，总之”；in some cases“在一些情况下”。本句意思为：这绝不是你第一次迟到了。

29. A 本题考查名词词义辨析。obstacle“障碍，妨害物”；distress“穷困，不幸，危难，忧伤”；fault“过错，缺点”；offense“冒犯，违反，过错”。本句意思：英语掌握不好会成为你达到目标的一个严重障碍。

30. B 本题考查特殊形容词比较级别。英文中表示比较一般会用到 than，但是 superior 一词需要和介词 to 搭配，构成固定短语 be superior to sb./sth.，意为“比……优越的，较好的”。这样的形容词还有 prior，inferior 等。本句意思：他认为自己比他的同学们优越，因为他父亲是个重要人物。

Test 3

1. Would you please lend me your bike? Mine is not ________?
   A. enough good　　B. good one
   C. good enough　　D. very good enough
2. Without air, the candle will ________.
   A. go off　　B. go through　　C. go out　　D. go over
3. One of the most important problems is how to ________ the interest in learning English.
   A. rise　　B. arise　　C. raise　　D. arouse
4. When we face difficulties in our English learning, we will never ________.
   A. give out　　B. give in　　C. give off　　D. give away
5. Tony as well as his brothers and sisters ________ from America.
   A. is　　B. are　　C. have been　　D. were
6. Tomorrow I'm leaving for New York and I'll stay there for ________.
   A. sometimes　　B. some times　　C. sometime　　D. some time
7. How much did you ________ on this new car?
   A. cost　　B. spend　　C. pay　　D. take
8. When the police broke into the house, they found old man ________ dead on the floor.
   A. laying　　B. laid　　C. lain　　D. lying
9. I'm not good at math. This problem is quite ________ me.
   A. above　　B. over　　C. beyond　　D. against
10. ________ your coming to see me, I would have been very lonely.
    A. But for　　B. On account of　　C. Owing to　　D. Thanks to
11. That is a hot tourist line. You should book the tickets ________.
    A. in turn　　B. in return　　C. in advance　　D. in schedule
12. We are quite ________ to our parents and our teacher.
    A. respectable　　B. respectful　　C. respective　　D. respected
13. —Shall I help you with the washing up?
    —Don't ________. I'll do it later.
    A. bother　　B. care　　C. trouble　　D. disturb
14. Those who felt like ________ the story again came over and added themselves to the audience.
    A. hearing　　B. to hear　　C. to be heard　　D. being heard
15. Mary told me that Father would ________.

A. have the hut be repaired
B. get the hut to be repaired
C. have the hut repaired
D. get the hut being repaired

16. I can hardly hear what he's saying, and ________.
A. so can all these other people
B. so can hardly all these other people
C. nor can all these other people
D. nor all these other people can

17. ________ what you intended, I should not have wasted my time trying to explain matters to you.
A. I had realized
B. Had I realized
C. Realized had I
D. Had realized I

18. I prefer clothes which are made out of natural materials, ________ cotton and wool.
A. as B. such as C. like D. just like

19. It was his doctor who advised that he ________ a holiday away from the city.
A. would have B. had C. has D. have

20. I don't think ________ necessary for Julie to make such a fuss about that sort of thing.
A. her B. it C. that D. this

21. I left very early last night, but I wish I ________ so early.
A. didn't leave B. hadn't left C. haven't left D. couldn't leave

22. North America produces a great deal more wheat ________.
A. as South America
B. than does South America
C. like South America does
D. than like South America

23. You must remember to ________ all your belongs out of this office today.
A. fetch B. take away C. bring D. take

24. She has got fifty dollars, but she wishes to get ________.
A. one other fifty dollars
B. the same amount also
C. another fifty
D. more fifty

25. I saw ________ boys at the cinema.
A. the both B. many a C. both the D. the several

26. ________ dictionary is enough for me.
A. Such one B. One such C. Such a one D. One such a

27. In order to finish the task in time we must agree ________ a plan of action.
A. with B. on C. to D. in

28. By the time next week, the winners ________ their awards.
A. will have receive
B. will be received
C. will have received
D. will have been receiving

29. George is delighted ________ his new secretary because she works very hard.
A. to B. with C. of D. at

30. The young man still denies ________ the fire behind the store.
A. to start
B. to starting
C. having started
D. having been started

1. A 本题考查 enough 用法。enough 用作形容词，放在被修饰的名词前面；用作副词，放在被修饰的形容词、副词之后。本句意思：你能把你的自行车借给我吗？我的不够好。

2. C 本题考查动词 go 短语辨析。go off “被切断；（食物）腐败；（疼痛）消失”；go through “（法案）被通过；（计划等）被批准；（交易）被谈妥”；go over “翻越而过；走过去”，

go out“（灯，火）熄灭，停止”。本句意思：没有空气，蜡烛将熄灭。

3. D 本题考查近形词辨析。rise 不及物动词，“上升”；arise 不及物动词，“出现，发生”；raise 及物动词，“提高或举起”；arouse 及物动词，“唤起，激励兴趣”。本句意思：最为重要的事情之一是怎样激发学习英语的兴趣。

4. B 本题考查动词 give 的短语搭配。give out“用尽，用光”；give off“放出（蒸汽，烟等）”；give in“投降，屈服，放弃”；give away“赠送，分配”。本句意思：当我们在英语学习中遇到困难，我们永不言弃。

5. A 本题考查主谓一致。本题考点为句子主语后跟 with，together with，followed，as well as 等引导的短语，谓语单复数形式跟前面的主语发生变化。本句的主语是 Tony，为第三人称单数形式。本句意：托尼和他的兄妹们都是美国人。

6. D 本题考查近形词辨析。sometimes“有时”；some time“日后”，表示在未来的不确定时间，现在用得极少。for some time“一段时间”。本句意思：明天我动身去纽约，将暂时在那儿逗留。

7. B 本题考查近义词用法。“某人花费时间或金钱在某事上”用 spend time/money on sth.。本句意：你买这辆车花了多少钱？

8. D 本题考查动词 lie，lay 的变形用法。lie 当“躺”来使用，其变形为 lay，lain，lying；laid 为 lay 的过去式，“放置”。本句意思：当警察破门而入后，他们发现老人躺在地板上死了。

9. C 本题考查介词用法。beyond“超出……能力以外；为……所不能够”。本句意思：我不擅长数学，这个难题超出了我的能力。

10. A 本题考查 but for 引导虚拟语气的用法。on account of“考虑到……”，but for“若非”本题与过去事实相反；owing to 和 thanks to 意为“由于”。本句意思：若不是你来看我，我会感到孤独的。

11. C 本题考查介词短语。in advance“预先地”，on schedule“准时”而非 in schedule；in return“作为回报”；in turn“轮流”。本句意思：那是一条旅游热线，你们应该提前订票。

12. B 本题考查同根词用法。respectable“应受尊敬的，值得尊敬的”；respectful“恭敬的，有礼貌的”；respective“各自的，各个的”；respected“受尊敬的”。本句意思：我们对师长恭敬有加。

13. A 本题考查近义词用法。bother“使烦扰……”。care“介意，理会”。trouble“烦恼”；disturb 常用于被动语态，“使心不安，烦恼”。本句意思：——我帮你清洗吧？——不麻烦你了，我一会儿清洗。

14. A 考查介词 like 用法。feel like doing sth.“喜欢做某事”。本句意思：那些想再次听这个故事的人又走过来，加入听众中。

15. C 本题考查分词结构。have sth. done“让别人做某事”。本句意思：玛丽告诉我，父亲要叫人维修一下茅屋。

16. C 本题考查 neither/nor 放句首引起的倒装。neither/nor 位于句首时，用部分倒装语序，表示前句的情形也适用于后句。本句意思：我听不到他正在说什么，其他人也没有听到。

17. B 本题考查省略 if 的虚拟条件句用法。if 从句中助动词 had 提前，if 省略；表示与过去事实相反的情形。本句意思：如果我当时认识到你的意图，我就不会费口舌向你解释这些事情了。

18. B 本题考查功能词（连接词和介词）用法。like 用法类同 just like，都是介词，表示“像……，恰似……”。as 是连接词，表实质相同。such as = for example 表举例说明。本句意思：

我较喜欢天然材料，如棉花和羊毛制作的衣服。

19. D 本题考查虚拟语气。在 advise 后宾语从句中用 should do 或 do 表虚拟。本句意思：正是他的医生建议他离开这座城市去度假的。

20. B 本题考查代词 it 作形式宾语的用法。it 用作形式宾语，for Julie to make such a fuss about... 不定式复合结构用作真正的宾语。本句意思：我认为 Julie 对这种事情小题大做没有必要。

21. B 本题考查虚拟语气的用法。虚拟语气要注意时态的使用，如果是与过去事实相反，从句的时态是过去完成时 had done，主句是 would have done。本句意为：昨天晚上我很早就离开了，但我希望我没有那么早离开。

22. B 本题考查比较级的使用，要注意比较对象要对等。more 应该与 than 搭配，助动词 does 和 produces 在本句中的用法一样。本句意为：北美小麦的产量远远超过南美。

23. D 本题考查近义词辨析，bring 和 take 的使用方向相反，bring 意思为“拿来”，take 的意思是“拿走”，fetch 含义为“to take and bring back 去拿来”。本句意为：今天，你一定要记得把你所有的东西带出办公室。

24. C 本题考查整体名词的使用。在本题中 50 dollars 是一个整体概念，所以用 another 来表示“另一个五十美元”。本句意为：她已得到了五十美元，可是她希望再得五十。

25. C 该题考查搭配。both 应放在定冠词的前面，several 应和 of 搭配使用，many a 表示“许多”，后面所跟名词应该用单数。本句意为：在电影院里，我看到了两个男孩。

26. D 固定搭配。such 无比较级及最高级，遇不定冠词 a（n）时，要放在该冠词之前；遇 all，one，few，several，some，any 等时则放在其后。本句意为：一本这样的字典对我来说已经足够了。

27. B 本题考查 agree 的搭配用法。agree with 后面应跟人，agree on 意为“对……达成协议，对……取得一致意见”，agree to 意为“同意……”，没有 D 项的搭配。本句意为：为了按时完成任务，我们必须对一项行动计划达成一致意见。

28. C 本题考查将来完成时。要注意和其他时态进行比较。将来完成时表示到将来某一时间为止已经完成的动作。本句意为：下周此时之前，胜利者们将已经拿到了他们的奖品。

29. B 本题考查 delighted 的搭配用法。be delighted to 后面要跟动词不定式，而 be delighted with/in 后面要跟名词或代词。本句意为：因为新秘书工作努力，乔治对她很满意。

30. C 本题考查了动名词作动词宾语。在本句“having started the fire behind the store”充当句子的宾语，表示动名词的动作已发生过。本句意为：那个年轻人依然否认在商店后面放过火。

Test 4

1. I cannot find my umbrella. I must have ________ it on the bus.
   A. lost B. forgotten C. mislaid D. left

2. The streets are all wet. It ________ during the night.
   A. must be raining B. must have been rain
   C. had to rain D. must have rained

3. Paul just had ________ .
   A. cut his hair B. his hair cut C. hair cut D. his hair cutting

4. Look ________ the different meanings of these words in a dictionary.
   A. out B. for C. up D. on

5. Because they usually receive the same score on examinations, there is disagreement as to ________

is the better student.

A. who B. which C. whom D. whose

6. Only after a year ________ to see the results of my experiment.

A. I began B. I had begun C. have I begun D. did I begin

7. I cannot imagine a time when ________ to solve.

A. there no problems will be B. there will be no problems

C. no problems there will be D. no problems will be there

8. It is generally believed that teaching is ________ it is a science.

A. an art much as B. much an art as

C. as an art much as D. as much an art as

9. A computer can only do ________ you have instructed it to do.

A. how B. after C. what D. when

10. ________ him tomorrow? It's too late now.

A. Why not to call on B. Why don't call on

C. Why not calling on D. Why not call on

11. There is miserable news that very few people ________ the earthquake.

A. recovered B. survived C. existed D. discovered

12. I asked him to ________ me a few minutes so that I could have a word with him.

A. spend B. spare C. save D. share

13. ________ your book and do this work first. You may read it later.

A. Put out B. Put away C. Put up D. Put on

14. Until then did I realize that their marriage had ________ because they had little in common.

A. put off B. given up C. broken down D. called off

15. —Would you like to come to see a film with me tonight?

—I'd love to, ________ I didn't finish my homework yet.

A. and B. so C. as D. but

16. ________ you've got an opportunity, you should take good advantage of it.

A. Now that B. After C. Although D. As soon as

17. Many companies are seeking to exploit and develop the rich natural ________ in west regions.

A. sources B. resources C. materials D. power

18. Some local companies are making great efforts to ________ with foreign companies for a share of the market.

A. connect B. combine C. compete D. compare

19. Many students will watch TV only to ________ time during the summer vacation.

A. spend B. waste C. enjoy D. kill

20. We were all ________ when we heard the ________ news that the rescue team found another survivor.

A. excited; excited B. exciting; exciting

C. excited; exciting D. exciting; excited

21. A survey of the opinions of students ________ that they also admit several hours of sitting in front of the computer ________ harmful for one health.

A. show; are B. shows; is C. show; is D. shows; are

22. Tired ________ she was, there was no hope of her being able to sleep.

A. if B. though C. even if D. unless

23. By the time your plane lands tonight, I ________ at the airport for 3 hours.
A. had waited B. have been waited
C. had been waiting D. will have been waiting

24. The activity was delayed, ________ was exactly ________ we wanted.
A. which; what B. which; which C. that; what D. that; that

25. The room is in a terrible mess; it ________ cleaned.
A. can't have been B. shouldn't have been
C. mustn't have been D. wouldn't have been

26. ________ a postgraduate, I would at least master two foreign languages.
A. Was I to become B. Were I to become
C. Had I become D. I should become

27. It is the third time I ________ to the Palace Museum, and I still think it is marvelous.
A. have gone B. go C. have been D. will go

28. He made the proposal that we ________ a role play at the English evening.
A. have B. had C. will have D. have had

29. All ________ you can do to comfort her is to listen to her story patiently.
A. what B. that C. which D. things

30. The manager ________ a rise in salary for ages, but nothing has happened yet.
A. is promised B. is promising C. has been promising D. promised

1. D 本题考查词汇辨析。lost“遗失，丢失”；forgotten“从记忆中忘记”；mislead“放错地方”；D 项意为“忘在某地没有拿走”。本句意为：我找不到雨伞了，我一定把它忘在公共汽车上了。

2. D 本题考查情态动词的用法。情态动词的完成式表示对过去动作的肯定推测，且有依据的推测。一般使用“must have done”。本句意为：大街上到处很湿，晚上一定下雨了。

3. B 本题考查表达分词作宾补。have sth. done 意为“让别人做某事”。本句意为：保尔刚刚理了发。

4. C 本题考查动词 look 的短语辨析。look out“小心，当心，注意”；look for“寻找、查询”；look on“旁观”。本句意为：请在词典里查询这些单词的不同含义。

5. A 本题考查名词性从句中连接代词 who 的用法。在本句中，as to 之后从句的逻辑主语为人，要用到宾格代词，而后面宾语从句中又缺主语，需要主格的代词，因此选用 who。本句意为：因为在考试中总是得相同的分数，所以就有争议，他们俩谁是更好的学生。

6. D 本题考查倒装结构。当 only 置于句首后跟状语时，后面要用部分倒装结构，本句意为：仅一年后，我就开始看到我的试验结果了。

7. B 本题考查定语从句中句子语序。when 引导定语从句，修饰先行词 time 要用到陈述语序，从句不用倒装语序。本句意为：我不敢想象没有问题需要解决的时候。

8. D 本题考查搭 much... as 的使用方法。as... as 是原级比较结构，一般为 as + *adj.* / *adv.* + as + 比较对象。本句意为：通常教学被认为是和科学一样的一门艺术。

9. C 本题考查代词 what 引导的宾语从句的使用。在 do 后的宾语从句中，what 充当 do 的逻辑宾语。本句意为：计算机只能做你指示它做的事情。

10. D why not 表示建议，其后要用动词原形。本句意为：为什么不明天给他打电话呢？现在太晚了。

11. B 本题考查动词词义辨析。recover“恢复”; exist“存在”; discover“发现”; survive“幸存，比……活有长久”。本句意为：不幸的消息传来，几乎没有人在地震中幸存。

12. B 本题考查动词词义辨析。spend“花费”; save“节省”; share“分享”; spare“（为某人或某目的）提供（时间、钱等）”。本句意思为：我让他给留出几分钟时间，这样我就能和他说几句话。

13. B 本题考查动词 put 短语辨析。put out“扑灭”; put away“放到一边”; put up“悬挂”; put on“穿上，戴上”。本句意为：把书放在一边，先做工作。你可以晚些时候再看书。

14. C 本题考查动词短语辨析。put off“推迟”; give up“放弃”; break down“失败；崩溃，解体”; call off“取消”。本句意为：直到那时我才意识到他们没有共同语言，婚姻已经解体。本题还要注意 put off，give up，call off 都是及物动词短语，只有 break down 是不及物动词短语。

15. D 本题考查连词用法。and 表示并列，but 表示转折。本句意为：——你愿意今晚和我一起看电影吗？——我倒想去，可是我还没有完成作业呢。因此，需要选择转折连词。

16. A 本题考查状语从句的引导词，now that 引导原因从句，意为“既然 ”; after 引导时间状语从句，意为“……之后”; although 引导让步状语从句，意为“即使 ”; as soon as 引导时间状语从句，意为“一……就 ”。本句意为：既然你得到这么好的机会，就要好好利用。因此，前半句为原因从句，需要使用 now that 引导。

17. B 本题考查名词词义辨析。source“来源”; resource“资源”，通常使用复数形式；material“材料”; power“力量，电力”。本句意为：许多公司正在寻求西部地区丰富的自然资源。

18. C 本题考查形近词辨析。connect“连接”; combine“组合”; compete“与……竞争”; compare“比较”。本句意为：一些本地公司正在努力与外国公司竞争以获取市场份额。

19. D 本题考查动词词义辨析，kill time 意思为“消磨时间”。spend“花费”; waste“浪费”; enjoy“享受”，均不符合题意，特别是本处表目的，看电视的目的不是故意浪费时间。本句意为：许多学生在暑假里看电视只是为了消磨时光。

20. C 本题考查使役动词 excite 的现在分词和过去分词的不同用法。excited 用于描述人，意为“感到兴奋的”; exciting 用于描述物，意为“令人兴奋的”。本句意为：救援队又找到了一名幸存者，这条振奋人心的消息让我们感到非常兴奋。

21. B 本题考查主谓一致。主句主语为 A survey，其谓语动词用单数形式，即 is；从句主语为 hours of sitting in front of the computer，是抽象概念，其谓语动词也应使用单数形式，即 shows，因此正确选项为 B。本句意为：对学生观点进行的一次调查表明：学生们也承认连续几小时坐在电脑前对健康有害。

22. B 本题考查 though，as 引起的倒装。在让步状语从句中，although 引导的从句使用正常语序，as 引导的让步状语从句需要倒装，而 though 用于这两种情况均可。本句还可以表达为：Though（Although） she was tired/Tried as she was...。本句意为：她尽管很累，却无法入睡。

23. D 本题考查动词时态。动词的主要时态是由与其相关的时间状语决定，在本句中 tonight 决定了动词要使用将来时态，by the time 表明动词要使用完成式，for 3 hours 表示时间的持续，因此还应使用进行时态。因此，本题需要使用现在将来完成进行时。本句意为：等到今晚你的飞机到达时，我在机场就已经等了 3 个小时了。

24. A 本题考查从句的引导词。前一空格处为非限制性定语从句的引导词，应选 which；后面空格处为名词性从句（此处为表语从句）的引导词，因从句本身缺失宾语。因此要使用

what。本句意为：活动推迟了，而这正是我们希望的。

25. A　本题考查情态动词表达推测的用法。对推测内容持有依据的肯定态度的，使用 must；在语气较弱时，也可使用 may，might；对推测内容持否定态度时，使用 can't 或 couldn't。如果对已经发生的事情进行推测，则使用情态动词 + have done 形式。本句意为：屋子里一团糟，肯定没有打扫过。

26. B　本题考查虚拟语气的用法。在虚拟条件句中，如果谓语表示的是将来情况，可用 were to/should + do 形式表达。另外，虚拟条件句可以不用 if 引导，将 did/had/were/should 等前移至句首，形成部分倒装句。本题是与将来事实相反，从句要用 were to do，主句用 would do。本句意为：如果我去读研究生，至少会掌握两门外语。

27. C　本题考查动词时态。如果动词相关的时间状语为 It be + 序数词 + time，表示第几次，则动词要使用完成式。本题还需注意 go 无法表达动作延续，因此不能选择 have gone。本句意为：这是我第三次去故宫了，可我依然认为它令人惊叹。

28. A　本题考查虚拟语气的用法。在表达“命令、祈使、要求、坚持、建议”等意义的动词、名词、形容词后的从句中，从句动词需要使用虚拟语气，一般以 should do 形式表现，should 可以省略。本句意为：他提议说，我们在英语晚会上应该有一个角色扮演的节目。

29. B　本题考查定语从句的关系代词。如果定语从句的先行词是 all，none，nothing，something，everything，anything，much，little，the one 等代词时，引导词只能使用 that。本句意为：要想安慰她，你能做的就是耐心地听她讲自己的遭遇。

30. C　本题考查现在完成进行时的用法。现在完成进行时表示一个动作从过去开始，到现在仍然进行。题干中状语 for ages 表明动词 promise 需要用完成式，but 后的分句暗示该动作依然进行，因此需要使用 have been promising 形式。本句意为：经理很久以来就许诺加薪，但是到现在还一直没有动静。

Test 5

1. Last year the advertising rate ________ by 20 percent.
   A. raised　B. aroused　C. arose　D. rose
2. When he arrived, he found ________ the aged and the sick at home.
   A. nothing but　B. none but　C. none other　D. no other than
3. The student was just about to ________ the question, when suddenly he found the answer.
   A. arrive at　B. give up　C. submit to　D. work out
4. We are all for your proposal that the discussion ________.
   A. be put off　B. was put off　C. should put off　D. is to put off
5. The first, second, and third prizes went to Jack, Tom, and Harry ________.
   A. equally　B. different　C. similarly　D. respectively
6. He had never given a speech to so many people, so he felt ________.
   A. excited　B. stupid　C. disappointed　D. nervous
7. Success in the lab doesn't always mean immediate success on a large ________.
   A. business　B. account　C. way　D. scale
8. Mr. Smith said that he did not want to ________ any further responsibilities.
   A. get on　B. look up　C. put up　D. take on
9. It is impossible to ________ with a person whose methods are completely opposed to your own.
   A. cooperate　B. correspond　C. compete　D. compare

10. It was the training that he had as a young man ________ made him such a good engineer.

A. has　　B. later　　C. which　　D. that

11. When the interval came, everyone ________ the bar.

A. made out　　B. made into　　C. made for　　D. made up

12. The wide use of computers is a ________ of the Information Age.

A. urgent　　B. characteristic　　C. remarkable　　D. feature

13. If either of you had been able to ________ your anger, the fight would have been avoided.

A. hold up　　B. hold out　　C. hold back　　D. hold onto

14. By lip reading or watching the movements of the speakers lips, a deaf person can actually see ________ the person at the other telephone is saying.

A. that　　B. how　　C. what　　D. where

15. The story of the homeless orphan has ________ sympathy from the public.

A. aroused　　B. attracted　　C. defended　　D. adopted

16. She will tell us why she feels so strongly that each of us has a role ________ in making the earth a better place to live on.

A. to have played　　B. to play　　C. to be played　　D. to be playing

17. The place ________ the bridge is supposed to be built should be ________ the cross-river traffic is the heaviest.

A. which; where　　B. at which; which

C. at which; where　　D. which; in which

18. The cost of living in Glasgow is among the lowest in Britain, ________ the quality of life is probably one of the highest.

A. since　　B. when　　C. as　　D. while

19. Thank you for all your hard work. I don't think we ________ it without you.

A. can manage　　B. could have managed

C. could manage　　D. can have managed

20. According to the air traffic rules, you ________ switch off your mobile phone before boarding.

A. may　　B. can　　C. would　　D. should

21. Had he worked harder, he ________ the exams.

A. must have got through　　B. would have got through

C. would get through　　D. could get through

22. The reason why he didn't come to school was ________ ill.

A. due to　　B. that he fell

C. because he fell　　D. because of falling

23. —I can't find my purse anywhere.

—You ________ have lost it while shopping.

A. may　　B. can　　C. should　　D. would

24. We should learn from those ________ are always ready to help others.

A. who　　B. whom　　C. they　　D. that

25. Mr. Herpin is one of the foreign experts who ________ in China.

A. works　　B. is working

C. are working　　D. has been working

26. Only when he had done it ________ that he had made a mistake.

A. he then realized B. he realized

C. did he realize D. before he realize

27. I, ________ your good friend, will try my best to help you out.

A. who is B. who am C. that is D. which am

28. The old man has two sons, ________ are lawyers.

A. both of them B. both of who C. both of whom D. both of they

29. He is a man of great knowledge, ________ much can be learned.

A. in whom B. about whom C. from whom D. of whom

30. Do you know the man ________ just now?

A. to who I nodded B. I nodded to

C. whom I nodded D. whom I nodded to him

1. D 本题考查形近词辨析。raise“提升；养育”；arouse“唤醒”；arise“出现”；rise“上升”。要注意四个动词及物和不及物的用法。本句意为：去年广告费率上升了20%。根据题意，需要用不及物动词，所以答案应选D。

2. B 本题考查短语辨析。nothing but 用于指物“仅仅”，none 用于修饰人“只有”，no other than 意为“正是”。本句意为：他到达时，发现只有老人和病人在家。所以答案选B。

3. B 本题考查动词短语辨析。arrive at“到达”；give up“放弃”；submit to“屈服于，提交”；work out“制定出；解决”。本句意为：这个学生正要放弃这道题时，突然找到了答案。

4. A 本题考查虚拟语气。一些表示“命令、建议、要求、惊叹、愿望”等动词、名词和形容词后跟名同性从句，从句谓语动词要用虚拟语气，其形式为 should do，should 可以省略。proposal 是表示建议的名词，其后从句要用此形式。本句意为：我们都赞成你推迟讨论的建议。

5. D 本题考查副词辨析。equally 意为“平等地”；differently“不同地”；similarly“相似地”；respectively“分别地”。prospectively 是专升本考试常见考点，也常和 respectful，respectable 进行辨析考查。本句意为：一、二、三等奖分别授予杰克、汤姆和哈利。

6. D 本题考查形容词辨析。excited“兴奋的”；stupid 意为“愚蠢的”；disappointed 意为“失望的”；nervous 意为“紧张的”。本句意为：他从来没有当着这么多人讲过话，因此感觉有点紧张。

7. D 本题考查名词辨析。business“商务，事务”；account 意为“账目；理由”；way 意为“方法；方式”；scale 意为“规模”，常用于短语 on a large scale“大规模地”。本句意为：在实验室中取得成功并不总是意味着就能立刻获得大规模的成功。

8. D 本题考查动词短语辨析。get on“登上”；look up“查阅”；put up“悬挂”；take on“承担；呈现”。本句意思为：史密斯先生说他不想承担任何更多的责任。

9. A 本题考查形近词辨析。cooperate“合作”；correspond“通讯”；compete“竞争”；compare“比较”。本句意为：和一个方法与你完全不同的人合作是不可能的。

10. D 本题考查强调句的用法。强调句型结构为：It is/was + 被强调部分 + that。本题目是 that 的考查。这也是专升本英语考试常见考点，几乎每年必考。本句意为：正是他年轻时的训练才使他成为一名优秀的工程师。

11. C 本题考查动词 make 短语的辨析。make out“辨认出”；make into“把……做成”；make for“朝……前进”；make up 意为“构成；弥补”。本句意为：休息时间到了，大家都朝吧台走去。

12. B 本题考查单词词义及词性辨析。urgent 意为“紧急的”；characteristic“典型的”；be characteristic of“是……特征”，remarkable 意为“显著的”；feature 意为“特征”。根据句意，空格处应填“特征”，同时根据结构，此处应使用名词，因此应选择 B。本句意为：广泛使用计算机是信息时代的特征。
13. C 本题考查动词 hold 短语的辨析。hold up“停顿”；hold out“坚持；提供”；hold back“控制，抑制”；hold on to“坚持”。本句意为：如果你们二人中的任何一个能够控制一下火气，就能避免打起来了。
14. C 本题考查宾语从句的引导词 what。本句空格后的从句中动词 say 缺宾语，因此要选择 what，因为 what 在名词性从句中作句子成分。本句意为：通过唇读或观察讲话人嘴唇的动作，聋哑人实际上可以看出另一个打电话的人在说什么。
15. A 本题考查动词词义辨析。arouse“引起”；attract“吸引”；defend“防御”；adopt“采纳；收养”。本句意为：这个无家可归的孤儿的故事引起了众人的同情。故应选择 A。
16. B 本题考查不定式结构作后置定语的用法。本题中 play 与 role 形成动宾关系，to play a role，因此要使用主动形式。本句意为：她会告诉我们为什么她强烈地感到我们每个人都应该在使地球成为更好的生存之地方面发挥作用。
17. C 本题考查从句的引导词。the place 后为定语从句，从句本身缺失地点状语，因此使用 where 或介词 + which 引导。be 后为表语从句，从句本身缺少状语，因此也使用 where 或介词 + which 引导，但是不能用介词 + which 引导表语从句。本句意为：修建桥梁的地点应该是跨河交通最繁忙的地方。
18. D 考查状语从句的引导词。while 引导让步状语从句，表示对比，一般可译为“然而”。本句意为：格拉斯格的生活费用在英国属最低之列，而生活质量则属最高之列。
19. B 考查含蓄条件的虚拟语气。本题中 without you 构成含蓄虚拟条件，意思为“若是没有”，句子的动词要使用虚拟语气，又由于动作已经发生，因此本题答案为 B。需要注意的是 because 也可以引导原因状语从句，但句子主语不能是 the reason。本句意为：谢谢你的辛苦工作，我想如果没有你，我们就无法做成这件事了。
20. D 本题考查情态动词的用法。本句意为：根据航空守则，你应该在登机之前关闭手机。因此应该选择 should。
21. B 本题考查虚拟语气。本句是省略 if 的条件句，表示了与过去事实相反的情形，因此主句动词要使用 would have done 形式，故答案为 B。本句意为：如果他当时学习再努力些，就能通过考试了。
22. B 本题考查表语从句。形成固定表达 The reason... is that...。因此本题答案为 B。本句意为：他不来学校的原因是他病了。
23. A 本题考查情态动词的用法。may 表示没有依据的肯定推测，意思为“或许”。本句为：—我到处都找不到我的钱包。—你可能买东西时丢了吧。
24. A 本题考查引导定语从句的关系代词。those 表示人时，其后的定语从句使用 who 来引导。本句意为：我们应该向那些乐于助人的人学习。
25. C 本题考查定语从句中动词的形式。“one of + 复数名词”，其后的定语从句是修饰复数名词本身，因此从句中使用复数谓语动词，故本题选择 C。本句意为：郝平先生是在中国工作的外国专家之一。
26. C 本题考查倒装句。only 位于句首，修饰状语时，其后的句子主干需要部分倒装，助动词 did 提到主语之前。本句意为：只有当他做的时候他才发现之前他犯了个错误。
27. B 本题考查定语从句中的主谓一致。定语从句中谓语动词的人称和数应与先行词的人称、

数保持一致。由于句中 I 为先行词，因此从句谓语应使用 am。本句意为：作为你的好朋友，我会尽力帮你走出困境。

28. C 本题考查定语从句的关系代词的用法。who，whom 都可以引导定语从句，区别在于 who 在从句中作主语和宾语，而 whom 在从句中只能作宾语。两者中介词后面只能用 whom，因此本题需选 whom，作介词 of 的宾语。本句意为：老人有两个儿子，他们都是律师。

29. C 本题考查定语从句中介词 + which（whom）的用法。from 与 learn 一起形式短语 learn from 意为“向……学习”。本题意为：他是个知识渊博的人，从他那儿可以学到很多东西。

30. B 本题依然考查定语从句中关系代词和介词的用法。从句中的介词 to 可以前置，形成 to whom I nodded，也可以留在从句中，形成 whom I nodded to，因此答案为 B。注意介词后只能用 whom 不能用 who。如果介词不前置，作宾语的 whom 或 who 可以省略。本句意为：你认识我刚才点头示意的那个人吗？

第三部分　专升本英语高频词汇必备

专升本必备系列：英语高频词组（一）

a few 少许，一些
a great deal/a good deal 许多，大量
a great many/a good many 许多，大量
a little 一些，少许；少许，一点儿
a lot/a lot of/lots of 大量，许多；非常，相当
a number of 许多
about to 即将
above all 首先，尤其
accustomed to 习惯于
add to 增加，添加，补充
add up to 总计，等于；意指
after a while 过了一会
after all 毕竟，虽然这样
agree on/upon 同意
agree with 与……意见一致
ahead of 在……之前，先于
ahead of time 提前
aim at 瞄准，针对
all at once 突然；同时，一起
all of a sudden 突然
all out 全力以赴
all over 到处，遍及
all right 行，可以；顺利，良好
all round 周围，处处
all the same 仍然，照样地
and so forth/and so on 等等
apply to 将……应用于；涂，抹
approve of 赞赏，同意；批准
around the clock/round the clock 昼夜不断地
as a matter of fact 实际情况，真相
as a result 由于，因此
as a rule 通常
as far as/so far as 只要，就……而言
as for/as to 至于；就……而言
as if/as though 好像，仿佛
as long as/so long as 只要，如果；既然
as soon as 一……就
as usual 像往常一样，照例
as well as 既……又，除……之外
as well 同样，也倒不如，不妨
as... as 与……一样
ask for 请求，要求
at a loss 困惑，不知所措
at a time 每次，一次
at all costs 无论如何，不惜任何代价
at all 完全，根本
at any rate 无论如何，至少
at best/at the best 充其量，至多
at first 最初，首先
at hand 在手边，在附近
at heart 在内心，实质上
at home 在家，在国内；自在
at large 总的，一般；在逃
at last 最终，终于
at least 最低限度
at most/at the most 最多，至多
at once 立刻，马上

at present 目前，现在
at cost of 以……为代价
at the moment 此刻
at times 有时
at work 在工作，忙于
at worst/at the worst 在最坏的情况下
back and forth 来回，往返
back down/off 放弃，让步，退却
back up 支持，援助
based on 以……为基础
be friends with 对……友好，与……交上朋友
be made up of 由……组成，构成
because of 由于，因为
before long 不久以后
begin with 从……开始
benefit from 收益于
both... and... 即……又……
break away from 脱离，逃跑
break down 分解，瓦解
break in 强行进入，闯入；打断，插嘴
break into 闯入
break out 突然发生，爆发
break through 突破
break up 打碎，拆散
bring about 使发生
bring forward 将……提前；提议
bring out 使出现，使显明
bring up 抚养，教育；提出问题
build up 增长；积累；增强
burn out 烧掉
burn up 烧尽
by accident/by chance 偶然，碰巧
by all means 一定，务必
by and by 不久以后，将来
by far ……得多
by hand 用手
by heart 牢记，凭记忆
by itself 单独地，独自地
by means of 用，凭借
by mistake 错误地
by the way 顺便提一下，另外
by turns 轮流，交替地
by way of 通过……方式
call for 要求，需要
call off 取消
call on/upon 访问，拜访，号召，呼吁
call up 召集，动员；打电话
cannot help 禁不住，忍不住
care for 照顾，关心；喜欢，意欲
carry on 继续，坚持下去；从事，经营
carry out 执行，贯彻
catch fire 着火，烧着
catch up with 追上，赶上
check in 办理登记手续
check out 结账后离开；检验，核查
check up/on 校对，检验，检查
clear up 解释，澄清；(天气）变晴
come about 发生，产生
come across 偶遇，碰到；发生效果
come off 成功，奏效
come on 请，来吧，快点
come out 出版，刊出；传出，显出，长出；结果是，结局是
come round/around 来访，前来；苏醒，复原
come through 经历，脱险
come to 苏醒，复苏
come true 实现，达到
come up 出现
compare to 把……比作
consist in 在于，存在
consist of 由……构成，由……组成
contribute to 为……出力，贡献
convince... of 使……信服
correspond to 相当于，对应，符合
count up 把……相加
cross out 删去，取消
cut back 削减，减少
cut down 削减，减少；降低
cut in 插嘴，打断
cut off 切掉，剪去，删去
deal with 处理，对付；讨论
die down 渐渐消失，平息
die out 消灭，灭绝

do away with 消灭，丢掉
do one's best 尽力而为
do without 没有……也行，将就
draw up 写出，画出，草拟
dress up 穿上盛装，打扮得漂漂亮亮
drop by/in 顺便来访
drop out 逃学，离队出走
due to 由于
each other 互相
either. . . or. . . 不是……就是……
enjoy oneself 过得快乐
even if/even though 即使，纵然
every now and then 有时，时时，偶尔
every other 每隔一个的
except for 除……以外
face to face 面对面
face up to 大胆面对
fall behind 落后
fall in love (with) 相爱，爱上
far from 绝不，绝非
feel like 想要
figure out 算出，估计，推测
fill in 填充，填写
fill out 填好，填写
find out 发现，查明，找到
focus on 集中于
for example 例如
for good 永久的，一劳永逸的
for instance 举例说，比如
for short 简称，缩写
for the better 好转，向好的方向发展
for the moment 暂时，目前
for the present 目前，暂时
for the time being 目前，暂时
from time to time 时常
get across 解释清楚，使人了解
get along (with) 相处；有进展，有起色
get away (from) 逃脱，离开
get hold of 抓住，掌握
get in 收获；到达，进站
get off 下车，从……下来；动身，开始
get on (with) 继续做；上车；在……方面
取得进展
get out of 逃避，改掉
get over 克服，（从病中）恢复过来
get rid of 摆脱，除去
get through 结束，完成；接通电话
get together 集会，聚会
get up 起床，起立
give away 泄露，暴漏，出卖
give back 送还；恢复
give in 投降，让步，认输
give off 发出，放出
give out 分发，分派
give rise to 引起，造成
give up 放弃，辞去；投降，屈服
give way to 让位于，被……代替
go about 从事，干；闲逛
go after 追逐，追求
go ahead 开始，前进，领先
go along with 陪同前往，随行
go around/round 足够分配
go by 经过，放过；过去
go for 竭力想取得；喜爱；支持，拥护
go in for 从事；致力于，追求；沉迷于
go into 研究，讨论，调查，审查
go off 爆炸，被发射，离去，走调
go on with 继续，持续
go on the stage 当演员
go out 熄灭
go over 浏览，读一遍；检查，复习，重说（读，看）
go through 完成，做完；检查，审查，搜查
go with 陪同前往，与……一致
go without 没有，将就，没有……也行
good for 有效，适用，胜任
had better 最好还是，应该
hand down 传下来，传给，往下递
hand in 交上，递交
hand in hand 手拉手，联合，连在一起
hand on 传下来，依次传递
hand out 分发，发给
hand over 交出，移交，让给
hang about 闲荡，徘徊，逗留

hang on to 紧握住，坚持下去
hang on 紧抓不放
hang up 挂断（电话）
have back 要回，收回
have on 穿着，戴着
have to do with 与……有关
have to/have got to 不得不，必须
have in mind 牢记……
head for 朝……走去
heart and soul 全心全意
help oneself 自取所需（食物等）
here and there 到处，处处
hold back 踌躇，退缩不前
hold on to 紧紧抓住
hold on 握住不放
hold out 坚持，不屈服
hold up 举起；支撑；承载；阻挡，使停止
how about ……如何，……怎么样
hurry up 使赶快，迅速完成
if only 要是……就
in a hurry 匆忙，立即
in a moment 一会儿
in a sense 从某种意义上说
in a word 总而言之
in addition to 除……之外，加之
in advance 提前，预先
in all 总共，共计
in any case 总之，无论如何
in brief 简单地说
in case of 假如，万一
in case 假如，以防
in charge of 负责，管理
in common 共用，共有
in danger 在危险中
in debt 欠债，欠情
in detail 详细地
in difficulty 处境困难
in effect 实际上，事实上
in fact 实际上，事实上
in favo（u）r of 赞成，支持，有利于
in front of 在……前面，面对
in future 今后，从今以后
in general 通常，一般来说
in half 成两半
in hono(u)r of 向……表敬意；为庆祝……，为纪念……
in no time 立即，马上
in one's way/in the way 妨碍，阻碍
in order that 以便
in order to 以便，为了
in order 整齐，秩序井然
in other words 换句话说，也就是说
in particular 特别，尤其，详细地
in person 亲自
in place 在适当的位置
in place of 代替
in practice 实际上，在实践中
in public 公众地
in question 在考虑中，在议论中的
in return（for）作为回报，作为报答
in secret 秘密地，私下地
in short 简言之，总之
in sight 被看见，在望
in spite of 尽管，不顾，虽然
in tears 流着泪，含泪，哭
in the end 最后，终于
in the face of 面对
in the first place 起初，首先
in the future 将来
in the least 一点，丝毫
in the world 究竟，到底
in time 及时地，适时地
in turn 依次，轮流
insist on/upon 坚持，坚持认为
instead of 代替
interfere in/with 妨碍，阻碍；干扰，干涉
just now 方才，一会儿以前
keep an eye on 留意，照看
keep back 阻止，阻挡，隐瞒，保留
keep down 控制，压制，镇压；压低，放低（声音）
keep house 管理家务
keep in touch 保持联系
keep off 不接近，避开

keep on 继续，保持
keep one's word 守信用
keep out of 躲开，置身……之外
keep track 通晓事态，注意动向
keep up with 跟上，不落后
keep up 继续，坚持，保持，维持
keep... in mind 记住……
knock down 撞倒，击倒
knock out 打昏；淘汰
laugh at 讥笑，嘲笑
lay down 放下；拟定；铺设
lay off（临时）解雇
lay out 安排，布置；设计；摆开，陈列
lead the way 带路，引路
lead to 通向，导致，引起
learn... by heart 牢记
leave alone 听其自然，不要去管
leave behind 落后，把……留下，忘带
leave out 省略，遗漏
let alone 听其自然；更不用说
let down 放下，降低，使失望
let go 放开，松手
let in 让……进入，放……进来
let off 放（炮、烟火），开枪
let out 放出，发出；放大（衣服）
line up 排队，使排成一行
live on/by 靠……生活，以……为食
live through 渡过，经受住
live up to 无愧于，不辜负
look after 照顾，关心，照料
look at 看，注视
look back 回顾，回头看
look down upon 看不起
look for 寻找，寻求
look forward to 盼望，期盼
look in 顺便看望，顺便，访问
look into 窥视，调查，过问
look on 旁观，观看
look out 注意，警惕
look over 检查，查看，调查
look through 浏览，温习
look up to 尊敬，敬仰
look up 查找，查阅，寻找，查出
lose heart 丧失勇气，失去信心
make a difference 有影响，很重要
make for 走向，冲向
make friends 交朋友，友好相处
make fun of 取消，嘲弄
make one's way 前进，行进
make out 开列；书写；看出，辨认出；理解，了解
make sense 讲得通，言之有理
make sure 查明，弄确实
make the most of 充分利用
make up 拼凑，组成，构成；编造（故事，谎言等）
make up for 补偿，弥补
make up one's mind 决定，下决心
make use of 利用
make way 开路，让路
mix up 混合，混淆，搞糊涂
more or less 或多或少，多少有点
neither... nor 既不……也不……
never mind 不要紧，没关系
no doubt 无疑，必定
no longer 不再，已不
no matter... 无论，不管……
no more 不再
no sooner... than... 一……就……
no wonder 难怪，怪不得
not as/so... as... 不如……那样……
not only... but (also)... 不仅……而且……
now that 既然
of course 自然，当然，无疑
off and on 断断续续，不时地
off duty 下班
on behalf of 代表……
on board 在（船、飞机）上
on business 出差
on duty 值班，当班
on earth 究竟，到底
on fire 着火
on foot 步行
on hand 在手边

on one's own 独自，靠自己
on purpose 故意地
on sale 上市；减价
on schedule 按预定时间
on the average 平均；一般说来
on the country 相反
on the one hand, on the other hand 一方面，另一方面
on the road 在旅途中
on the spot 当场，在现场
on the whole 总的来说
on time 准时
on top of 在……之上
once in a while 偶尔，有时
once more 再一次
once upon a time 从前
once after another 一个接一个
one another 互相
or else 否则，要不然
or so 大约，左右
out of 在……外，离开，从……里；出于；缺乏，没有
out of breath 上气不接下气
out of control 失去控制
out of danger 脱离危险
out of date 陈旧的，过时的
out of doors 在户外
out of order 发生故障，失调
out of place 不适当的
out of practice 久不练习，荒疏
out of sight 看不见
out of the question 不可能的，办不到的
out of touch 失去联系
out of work 失业
owing to 由于
pass away 去世
pass out 昏倒
pay attention to 注意
pay back 偿还，回报
pick out 选出
pick up 拾起；车船中途搭人带货；增加
play with 以……为消遣，玩弄
point out 指出
pull down 拉倒，摧毁
pull up 使停下
put across 解释清楚，说明
put aside 储存，保留
put away 收起，放好
put down 记下，写下
put forward 提出
put off 推迟
put on 穿上，戴上；上演；增加（体重）
put out 熄灭；生产，出版，发布
put up 举起，升起，提（价）；为……提供食宿；建造，搭起；张贴
put up with 容忍，忍受
quite a little/quite a few 相当多，不少
rather than 而不，不顾
refer to 查阅；提到，谈到
rely on 依靠，信赖
remind sb. of 使某人想起，提醒
result from 起因于
result in 导致
ring up 打电话
rub out 擦掉
run across 偶然遇到
run down 撞到，撞沉
run for 竞选
run into 偶然遇到，碰撞
run out（of）用完，耗尽
run over 浏览，匆匆复习
run through 匆匆地看
see（to it）that 注意，留心；负责，照料
see about 调查，查询
see into 调查，检查
see off 给……送行
see through 看穿，识破
see after/for 搜寻，寻觅
send for 派人请；索取
send in 呈报，提交，送来
serve as 担任；起……作用
set about 开始，着手

set aside 宣布无效；驳回
set back 推迟，阻碍
set fire to 使燃烧，点燃
set off 动身；使爆炸；引起
set out 动身，开始；制定，打算
set up 建立，树立；资助，使自立
settle down 定居
show in 领入
show off 炫耀，卖弄
show up 使显现，使醒目
shut down 关闭
shut out 排除
shut up 住口；关上全部门窗
sick of 厌烦
side by side 肩并肩，一个挨一个
sit up 熬夜
slow down 放慢速度
so far 迄今为止
so that 为了；以致
so... that/such... that/so... as to
如此……以至于
sooner or later 迟早
speak of 谈到
speak out 毫无保留地说出
speed up 加速
stand by 站在旁边，袖手旁观；支持，帮助
stand for 代替，代表；意味着
stand out 突出，显眼
stand up for 为……辩护，维护
stand up to 勇敢地面对，坚决抵抗
step by step 逐渐地
step down 让位，下台
step in 介入
step up 提高，加快
stick to 坚持，忠于
substitute for 替代
such as 诸如，像……那样的
sum up 总结，概括
take a chance 冒险一试
take advantage of 利用
take after 与……相像
take apart 拆开
take care 留心；保重
take care of 照料；承担，处理，负责
take charge 负责
take delight in 以……为乐
take down 记下，写下
take effect 生效，见效
take... for granted 想当然
take for 认为，以为
take in 接受；领会；欺骗
take off 脱下；起飞
take on 呈现，装出；接纳；承担，从事
take one's time 不急不忙，从容进行
take over 接管
take pains 尽力，煞费苦心
take part in 参加
take place 发生
take the place of 代替
take turns 轮流
take up 占据；开始从事；拿起
talk back 顶嘴
talk into 说服
talk over 商量
thanks to 由于，多亏
that is 也就是说
the moment that 一……就……
think better of 改变主意，重新考虑
think of 想起
think of as 把……认为是……
think over 仔细考虑
throw away 扔掉，抛弃
throw up 呕吐
touch on 关系到，涉及
try on 试穿
try out 实验
try one's best 尽力
turn down 调低音量；拒绝
turn in 上缴；拐入
turn into 变成
turn off 关闭
turn on 打开

turn out 生产，制造；驱逐；结果是，证明是
turn over 翻转
turn to 转向；求助于
turn up 出现，发生
under control 被控制住
under the circumstances 在这种情况下
under way 进行中
up to 一直到；等于；忙于
up to date 时兴的

专升本必备系列：英语高频词组（二）

1. enable sb. to do sth. 使某人能做某事
   The computer enables people to communicate with each other more conveniently. 计算机使人们彼此间能更方便地交流。
2. be about to do sth. . . when 正要做某事……突然……
   I was about to go shopping when it suddenly began to rain. 我刚要出去买东西，天就突然下雨了。
3. by accident/by chance/accidentally 偶然地
4. come across sb. 偶然遇见某人
5. act on sth. 依……行事
   Each student should act on the rules and regulations of the school. 每个学生都应该遵守学校的规章制度。
6. add to/add up to 加上/总计达
   The number of the patients added up to three hundred last week. 上星期，病人人数达到了三百人。
7. in advance/ahead of time 提前
8. take advantage of = make use of 利用
   We can take advantage of computer to analyze data. 我们可以利用计算机分析数据。
   A good habit in learning is to make full use of class time. 一个学习的好习惯是充分利用课堂时间。
9. agree to do sth. /agree with sb. /agree to sth. 同意做某事/某人/某事
10. aim at doing sth. 下定目标做某事
    Aiming at winning the game, he practiced hard every day. 为了赢得比赛，他每天努力练习。
11. allow/permit/forbid doing sth. 允许/允许/禁止做某事
12. allow/permit/forbid sb to do sth. 允许/允许/禁止某人做某事
13. apologize to sb. for sth. 因某事向某人道歉
14. take sth. in one's arms 某人抱着某物
15. arrive at a conclusion 得出结论
16. put sb. to shame 使某人相形见绌
    His courage put all the other students to shame. 他的勇气令其他学生都感到自愧不如。
17. be astonished at sth. 因某事感到震惊
18. make the bed 铺床
19. blame sb. for sth. /it is me to blame 因某事责怪某人/该受责怪的人是我
20. break down/break up/break out/break into
    坏了/驱散/爆发/破门而入
21. hold one's breath/out of breath 屏住呼吸/上气不接下气

22. bring about/bring up 引起，使发生/抚养长大
23. burst into tears/laughters 突然大哭/大笑
24. burst out crying/laughing 突然大哭/大笑
25. call at somewhere/call on sb. /call up/call off/call out to/call for/call on sb. to do
    拜访某地/拜访某人/打电话/取消/大喊/叫来/号召某人做某事
26. carry out/work out/point out/find out 实现/做出/指出/查明
27. catch up with sb. /keep up with sb. /put up with sb.
    赶上某人/跟上某人/容忍某人
28. regard *n.*
    with/in regard to sth. 关于（用于点题）
    in this/that regard 关于这/那方面
    v. regard sb. as sth. 认为，看作
    Though 20 years old, the book is still regarded as the authority on the subject. 尽管出版已有20年之久，这本书仍然被视作这一领域的权威论著。
29. come into being/come to oneself 形成/恢复意识
    The new system came into being in the late 19th century. 这种新体制在19世纪后期开始形成。
30. have sth in common with sb. 和某人有共同点
    The twins have a lot of things in common with each other. 孪生姐妹间有很多相似点。
31. congratulate sb. on sth. /doing sth. 祝贺某人某事
32. be regarded/thought of/considered as 被认为，被当成
33. be content/satisfied/pleased with 对……感到满意
34. encourage sb. to do sth. /encourage sb. in sth. 鼓励某人做某事
    He always encourages me to work hard. 他总是鼓励我努力工作。
    He always encourages me in my study. 他总是在学习上鼓励我。
35. take... into account = take... into consideration 把……考虑在内
    I hope my teacher will take into account my illness when he grades our test paper.
    我希望老师在打分时考虑一下我的病情。
    account *n.* 描述
    She gave an account of what she saw in China. 她描述了她在中国所见到的事物。
36. deal with/do with/handle 处理，解决
37. be determined to do sth. /make up one's mind to do 下定决心做某事
38. to some degree/to some extent/in a way 从某种程度上来说
39. range between/range from ... to（在一定范围内）变化
    They range in price from $3 to $15. 它们的价格在3到15美元之间变化。
40. take delight in sth. /doing sth. 乐于……，以…为乐
    I fully agree to the arrangement and take delight in it. 我完全赞成并乐于接受这一安排。
    One should not take delight in making fun of others. 人不能以取笑他人为乐。
41. depend on/rely on/feed on/live on 依靠/依靠/用……喂养/以……为生
42. in the distance/at a distance 在远处/隔一段距离
43. dress sb. in sth. /sb. be dressed in sth. 打扮某人
44. be due to do sth. /be due to sth. 按期，按理该做某事/由于
    The train is due to arrive at 5 o'clock. 火车应在五点到达。

The failure is totally due to his carelessness. 失败都是由他的粗心造成的。

45. be eager to do sth. /be eager for sth. 迫不及待做某事/对某事很热衷
46. have an effect on sth. 对……有影响

Smoking has a bad effect on people's health. /吸烟有害健康。

47. make efforts to do sth. 千方百计做某事
48. equip sb. with sth. /arm sb. with sth. 用……来武装某人

The young people must arm themselves with knowledge. 年轻人必须用知识武装自己的头脑。

49. expect sb. to do sth. /count on sb. to do sth. /want sb. to do sth.

期待某人做某事/指望某人做某事/想让某人做某事

50. make a face/be faced with sth. 做鬼脸/面对……

She was faced with many difficulties when doing the experiment. 她在做实验时遇到很多困难。

51. have faith in sth. /be faithful to sth. 对……忠诚
52. fall asleep/fall ill/fall silent 入睡/生病/恢复寂静
53. sb. be familiar with sth. /sth. be familiar to sb. 某人熟悉某物
54. find fault with sb. /sb. be at fault 挑某人的毛病/是某人的错
55. do sb. a favor/give sb. a hand 帮某人忙
56. feel like doing sth. /would like to do sth. 想要做某事
57. be fit/suitable for sth. 适合，胜任

Mary believes that she is fit for the new job. 玛丽相信她可以胜任新的工作。

58. be fond of doing sth. 对做某事感兴趣
59. force sb. to do sth. /make sb. do sth. /have sb. do sth. /get sb. to do sth. /let sb. do sth.

迫使某人做某事，让某人做某事

60. give out/give away/give up/give in/give off/give back

分发/送人/放弃/屈服/释放气体/归还

I saw a man giving out pamphlets on the street. 我刚看见一个人正在街道上发传单。

When I grow up, I give away all my toys to my brothers. 我长大后，把所有的玩具都给了我弟弟。

Cars give off much poisonous gas every day. 汽车每天释放出很多有害气体。

61. learn/know sth. by heart 背诵，牢记在心
62. help oneself to sth. /cannot help doing sth. /cannot help to do sth.

随便吃/禁不住做某事/不能帮忙做某事

63. hold on/hold up 坚持，稍等/阻塞
64. insist on/persist in/stick to 坚持
65. knock at the door/knock into the wall/knock out sb. /knock sth. off/knock sth. over

敲门/撞墙/打晕某人/把……打掉/把……撞倒

Who has knocked the vase off the shelf? 谁把花瓶从架子上弄掉的？

66. let out the secret/keep sth. a secret 泄密/保守秘密
67. before long/long before/it is not long before...

不久之后/很久以前/不久之后便……

It was not long before I realized that how foolish I was at that time. 不久之后我便意识到我当时是多么的愚蠢。

68. be made up of/consist of/contain/include 由……构成/包含，包括

The class is made up of fifty students. /The class consists of fifty students. /The class contains/in-

cludes fifty students. 这个班由五十名学生组成。

69. mean to do sth. /mean doing sth. 打算做某事/意味着做某事
    I didn't mean to hurt you by telling you the truth. 我告诉你真相并不是打算要伤害你。
    It means killing me that you lie to me. 对我撒谎就意味着要杀了我。
70. in badly need of/in lack of/in want of 急需，缺乏
71. have nothing to do with sb. /it is none of sb.'s business
    和某人没关系/不管某人的事
72. object to sth. /doing sth. 反对某事/反对做某事
73. an idea occur to sb. 某人突然想到一个主意
    An idea occurred to Tom that he can hide himself under the bridge. 汤姆突然想到他可以藏在桥底下。
74. owe sth. to 把……归功于
    He owed all his success to the supports from his family. 他把成功归功于家人的支持。
76. sth. cost sb. some money
77. sb. spend some money on sth. /in doing sth.
78. it takes sb. some money to do sth.
79. take place/take one's place/take the place of sb.
    发生/取代某人/取代某人
80. practice doing sth. 练习做某事
81. provide sb. with sth. /provide sth. for sb. 向某人提供某物
82. on purpose 故意地
83. rather than/other than 而不是/除了，不同于
    He bought the red tie rather than the green one. 他买了那条红领带而不是那条绿色的。
    He never speaks to me other than to ask for something. 他除了向我要东西，从不和我说话。
    She seldom appears other than happy. 她很少有不高兴的时候。
84. refer to 指的是，提及
85. play a role in 在……扮演一个角色，在某方面起作用
86. make room for 为……腾地方
87. see sb. off/meet sb. at the station 为某人送行/去车站接某人
88. send out/send for a doctor/send off/send up
    派出/派人去请医生/发出气体/发射
89. make sense 有意义
    What you have said makes no sense. 你刚才说的话都是废话。
90. sentence sb. to death/stone sb. to death/starve sb. to death
    判某人死刑/用石头把某人打死/饿死某人
91. be similar to 与……相似
92. be sensitive to 对……感到敏感
    The little girl is very sensitive to the sunshine. 那个小女孩对阳光很敏感。
93. stop sb. from doing sth. /keep sb. from doing sth. /prevent sb. from doing sth.
    阻止某人做某事
94. suffer from sth. 遭受……痛苦
95. be sure to do sth. 有信心做某事

She is sure to win the first prize in the competition. 她有信心在比赛中获胜。

96. make sure 确保，确定

When you leave the room, make sure that all the windows are shut. 当你离开房间时，确保关上窗子。

97. it is certain that 毫无疑问的是……

98. tear sth. into pieces 把……撕成碎片

99. all the time/all the same/all the best/all the way 一直/同样/一切都好/一路上

He came all the way by air in order to watch the finals. 他一路飞来，为的就是看最后的决赛。

100. be tired of doing/be tired from doing 厌倦做某事/因某事感到劳累

101. keep in touch with sb. /lose touch with sb. 和某人保持联系/和某人失去联系

102. turn to sb. for help 向某人寻求帮助

103. make oneself understood 使自己被别人理解

104. used to do sth. /would do sth. 过去常常

105. be used to doing sth. /be accustomed to doing sth. 习惯做某事

106. be used to do sth. /get used to do sth. /be used for sth. 被用来做某事

107. by the way/in the way/in a way/on the way/in no way/in this way

顺便说说/碍事/从某种程度上来说/在路上/绝不/就这样

108. be willing to do sth. /be unwilling to do sth. 愿意做某事/不愿意做某事

109. have a word with sb. /have words with sb. 和某人谈话/和某人吵架

110. in a word/in short/to sum up 总之

111. in other words 换言之

112. word came that …有消息称……

Word came that there would be a new round of sale next week. 有消息称下周还有新一轮的打折。

113. be worth doing/be worthy to do 值得做某事

The book is worth reading. /The book is worthy to be read. 这本书值得一读。

114. accuse sb. of doing sb. 指控某人做某事

He was accused of murdering his boss. 他被指控谋杀了他的老板。

115. assure sb. of sth. 向某人确保……

The shop assistant kept assuring me of the quality, so I took it. 售货员不断向我保证质量，所以我就买下了。

116. get rid of sth. 去除，消除

117. suspect sb. of doing sth. 怀疑某人做某事

118. warn sb. of sth. 警告某人某事

I have warned him of the danger many times, but he won't listen to me. 我警告过他很多次，但是他就是不听我的。

119. be independent of sth. /be dependent on sth. 独立于/依赖于

120. be dismissed from/be fired from 被……解雇

121. protect sb. from sth. /doing sth. 保护某人免受，免于……

The umbrella can protect people from the rain. 雨伞可以保护人们不受雨淋。

122. sb. be engaged in doing sth. 忙于做某事

123. fail in sth. /fail to do sth. 失败于某事

124. indulge oneself in sth. /doing sth. 沉溺于某事

He indulged himself in traveling all over the world. 他沉溺于他的环球旅行。

125. sb. be involved in sth. 某人被牵涉进某事中

I don't want to be involved in their quarrel. 我不想搅和进他们的争吵中。

126. concentrate on sth. /doing sth. 全神贯注做某事

127. afford (to do) sth. 买/花/用/支付得起

128. economize on sth. 节约

We should economize on all kinds of energy. 我们应该节约各种能源。

129. embark on sth. 开始着手做某事

130. operate on sb. 给某人动手术

131. vote on sth. for sb. /against sb. 就某事对某人进行投票选举，赞成/反对

132. amount to 达到

133. appeal to sb. 吸引某人

The bright colors always appeal to the young girls. 鲜艳的颜色总是很吸引年轻女孩。

134. attach to 依恋于，依附于

135. confined sb. to 把某人限定在一个范围内

The mother confined her naughty son to the room. 妈妈把调皮的儿子关在房间里。

136. see to 负责准备

Whose turn to see to the dinner today? 今天轮到谁做饭了？

137. surrender oneself to 屈服于，投降于

138. yield to 屈服

139. account for sth. 解释……的原因

The heavy traffic accounts for my late. 我迟到的原因是交通拥挤。

140. hope for sth. 希望得到某物

141. begin with/end up with 从……开始/以……结束

142. cope with 应对，解决

143. reason with sb. 规劝某人

I have tried to reason with him, but he is too stubborn. 我尽力说服他，但是他太固执了。

144. be responsible for sth. 对……负责

145. be curious about sth. 对……好奇

146. be keen on sth. 对……热衷

147. be indifferent to sth. 对……感到无所谓

148. be inferior to 低于……，劣等于

149. be new to sth. 对……陌生

150. be obedient to 服从于

专升本必备系列：英语高频词组（三）

1. ability，enable，capable，be able to do 能够做……

（1）have the ability to do 能够做，有能力做……

He has the ability to make very good boat. 他有能力做一艘很好的船。

（2）enable sb to do 使……能做……

Internet has enabled us to get information from all over the world. 因特网使我们能够从世界各地得到信息。

（3）be capable of 能够做……

He is capable of drawing oil painting. 他能画油画。

（4）be able to = can 能够

He is able to read and write in English. 他能用英语阅读和写作。

2. 表示“获得、得到，赢得”的一类动词。

（1）acquire 多指经过努力逐步获得才能、知识、习惯等，也可用于对财物等的获得，该词强调“一经获得就会长期持有”的含义。

They must struggle against their circumstances to acquire the basics of survival and human dignity. 他们必须在这样的环境下进行斗争来获得基本的生存权和尊严。

（2）attain 指经过不懈的努力获得未曾预料到的结果；也可指达到某一目标。

How can we attain fulfillment in this world? 在这个世界上我们怎样才能获得满足？

Still greater efforts are needed before we can attain our goal. 我们必须百尺竿头，更进一步，才能达到目的。

（3）obtain 获得，买到，用于正式语体中。

It is difficult to obtain reliable evidence. 很难获得可靠的证据。

You can also obtain knowledge through practice. 你还可以从实践经验中获得知识。

（4）gain 指通过较大努力获得某种利益或好处

This should help you gain trust. 这可以帮助你获得信任。

（5）earn 挣得，赢得，指因工作等而得到报酬或待遇。

How much do your earn a week? 你一星期赚多少钱？

（6）achieve 得到，获得，多指成就、目标、幸福的取得。

All we need to do to achieve that is produce more，consume less，or both. 为了达到目标，我们需要做的就是多生产，少消费，或者两者均衡。

3. 形近词辨析：

（1）abroad *adv.* 在国外，在海外

High school students may benefit from going abroad to study language. 高中生去国外学语言可能有好处。

（2）aboard *adv.*/*prep.* 在（船，飞机，车）上，上（船，飞机，车）

If there's an emergency evacuation, leave all your bags, packs and possessions aboard. 如果要紧急疏散，将你所有的袋子、背包和财产留在机上。

（3）absorb *v.* absorb sb. in sth. , sb. be absorbed in sth.

You can tell he was absorbed in his conversation, and not paying much attention to the road. 可以看出，他当时光顾着说话而没有注意路上的情况。

4. advantage, benefit, interest, favor, profit, gain 这些名词均有“利益，好处”之意。

（1）advantage *n.* 指因某方面占优势或利用某机会以及对方弱点而获得利益与好处。

The Chinese team enjoyed the height advantage. 中国队占有身高优势。

（2）benefit *v.* 普通用词，指通过正当手段从物质或精神方面得到的任何好处或利益。

That was a health programme to benefit everyone.

那是一项对每个人都有好处的健康计划。

（3）favor 指在竞争中获得的好处，也可指狭隘的个人利益。

But everything seemed to be in my favor. 但似乎每件事都对我有利。

（5）profit 着重收益，尤指从物质、钱财等方面获得的利益。

This transaction afforded them a good profit. 这笔交易给他们带来了大额利润。

5. 形近词辨析：

（1）adapt *v.* adapt to sth. /doing sth. 使适应，使适合

Her children adapted quickly to living in a small town. 她的孩子很快适应了小城镇的生活。

（2）adopt *v.* 收养；接收，采取

She was forced to have her baby adopted. 她被迫把婴儿给别人收养。

This is the attitude that everyone should adopt towards their frustrations. 这是每个人面对挫折时应该采取的态度。

adopt various methods 采取不同办法

（3）adjust *v.* + to 使适应，适应

Adjusting to the tropical heat was more difficult than I had expected. 适应热带地区的高温比我预料的更为困难。

6. 表示“相同，类似”等的一类词。

（1）same “同样的”、“一样的”，指相同的人或事物，其前需用定冠词 the。

Old people do not feel the same about these things as the younger generation. 老年人对这些事情的感觉与年轻的一代不一样。

similar “类似的”，指两者有相似性，非同一人或事物。常用结构：similar to。

Anyone who has spent time with children is aware of the difference in the way boys and girls respond to similar situations. 与小孩待过的人都知道男孩和女孩对类似的情况反应方式上有不同之处。

Your views on the political situation are very similar to mine. 你对政治形势的看法与我的看法非常相似。

（2）identical “同样的”，意义上接近 the same，常用结构：identical with... 。有时还可以表示“同一个的”。

Yet underneath their labels, these products are often nearly identical (the same). 然而，在标签下这些产品通常是几乎相同的。

This is the identical hotel we stayed at last year. 这是我们去年住过的同一家旅馆。

（3）alike “相似的”，只用作表语。

The two buildings are alike in size and shape, but different in their uses. 这两座建筑物在大小和形状上相似，但其用途不同。

（4） likely *adj.* 可能的 be likely to

The blockade is likely to last for some time. 封锁可能要持续一段时间。

7. arise, rise, rouse, arouse, raise 的区分：

（1） arise *v.* （arose, arisen）

“发生”，如：Problems arose from the outset. 一开始就产生了很多问题。

“起源于”，如：Accidents always arise from the carelessness. 许多事故都源于粗心。

（2） rise（rose, risen）

v. “上升”，（不及物动词）

n. “上升，上涨”

give rise to = lead to 引起，如：

The food shortage gave rise to the serious problems. 食品的短缺引起了严重的问题。

（3） rouse “唤醒”，如：I was roused by the sound of the alarm. 我被闹铃的声音吵醒。

（4） arouse “唤起”，如，arouse one's interest/sympathy “唤起某人的兴趣/同情心”

（5） raise 根本含义“使上升”，

“举起”，raise one's hand

“提出”，raise a question

“抚养”，相当于 bring up，如：raise children

“筹集”，raise funds

8. 表示“帮助、援助”的一类词。

（1） aid *v.* 帮助，援助，带有被帮助者是弱者，处于需要帮助及安慰状态的含义。

China never hesitates to aid those weak and small countries. 中国总是毫不犹豫地帮助弱小国家。

（2） help *v.* 帮助，指帮助某人达到一个目的，普通用语。

You are hindering rather than helping. 你在帮倒忙。

（3） assist *v.* 帮助，指帮助者在援助过程中只起辅助作用，事情主要由被帮助者来做。

He assisted me in my experiments. 他协助我做实验。

9. living, alive, live, lively 均与“活，活着的”有关。

（1） living *adj.* 指活着的生命有机体。既可放在名词之前，也可放在其后。如：

All living plants grow fast in the spring. 春天所有活着的植物都长得很快。

（2） alive 多用于人，含有未死的意思，但必须放在动词或被修饰的名词之后。如：

He is the happiest man alive. 他是世界上最快乐的人。

all the living people = all the people alive

She does not know if he is alive or dead. （作表语）她不知道他是活还是死。

（3） live *adj.* 活的，生动的；实况转播的；精力充沛的

We saw a real live snake. 我们看见了一条活生生的蛇。

live coverage of the World Cup 世界杯赛的实况转播

a live wire 活跃而精力充沛的人

（4） lively 意为活泼的

an intelligent and lively young woman 一位聪慧而充满活力的年轻女士

10. 表示“指责、控告”等的词组：主要根据动词后的介词区分。

accuse sb. of sth. = charge sb. with sth. = blame sb. for sth. 指责……做了……；指控……犯了……

He was accused of robbing the bank and sentenced ten years in jail. 他被指控抢劫银行并判处十年监禁。

His mother charged him with being lazy. /His mother blamed him for being lazy.

他母亲指责他太懒。

11. 表示“设备、装备”等的一类词。

（1） facility 可数名词，常用复数形式。各种设施（建筑，人员，服务，设备，仪器等）。facilities 指为一特殊活动或目的所提供的种种便利，包括设备、建筑物和服务等等。

It describes completely the facility and its safety basis. 它完整地描述了设备和它的安全基础。

Many old houses have been updated with modern facilities. 许多老房子都添加了现代设备而变得很入时了。

（2） equipment 是不可数名词，指用于某一特殊目的的东西，供给品，仪器，机械，工具，器材，装备（武器）等。The equipment of the photographic studio was expensive. 这个摄影室的装备耗费巨大。

（3） device 装置，设计，策略，设备，这个既可以是抽象的，也可以是具体的。

The recording device has activated. 录音装置已开动起来。

（4） appliance（家用）器具；器械；装置

The employer was in the appliance industry. 雇主从事的是器具行业。

12. empty，vacant，blank，void，vacuous，bare，barren 这些形容词用于表明无内容或缺乏逻辑上会有或应有的内容。

（1） empty 空的，徒劳的，指没有内容或实质的。

an empty box 空盒子；an empty room 空房子；empty promises 空许诺

（2） vacant 空缺的，空闲的，指没有人居住的或未在职的。

The auditorium is full of vacant seats. 礼堂中满是空椅子。

The chairmanship is vacant. 主席职位空缺。

修辞上该词指缺乏理念意志：a vacant stare 茫然凝视；a vacant mind 空虚的大脑。

（3） blank 空白，空白表格，强调某种缺乏，尤指在传递含义和内容的方面。

blank pages 空白页；a blank expression 无意义的表达

（4） void 用来指没有或完全缺乏可分辨内容的。

space void of matter 太空没有物质

gibberish void of all meaning 毫无意义的胡言乱语

（5） vacuous 空的，无意义的，像真空一样缺少物质。

a vacuous smile 一个空洞的笑容

led a vacuous life 过着空虚的生活

（6） bare 空的，赤裸的，表示没有覆盖物。

trees standing bare in November 11 月树木光秃秃的

a bare head or detail（just the bare facts）光头或细节（只有空洞的事实）

这个单词也用来表示被剥去了内容或装备的状态。

The closet is bare. 这个壁橱是空的。

13. adapt = adjust 适应；adopt 收养；采用

You should adapt to college life as soon as possible. 你应该尽快适应大学生活。

He adjusted himself very quickly to the weather in the country. 他很快适应了这个国家的天气。

There are hundreds of people desperate to adopt a child. 有数以百计的人极其渴望收养小孩。

14. 表示“战争、战役”等的一类词。

（1） fight 意为“战争”，指战争的动作。

They fought back in self-defense. 他们进行了自卫还击。

（2） war 指全面战争，包含多次。

We experienced two world wars in the last century. 上个世纪我们经历了两次世界大战。

（3） battle 战役，指大的、连续数小时数天的战争。the battle of Waterloo 滑铁卢战役

（4） struggle 指较长时间的激烈的争斗，常指肉体、精神上的战斗。

They had to struggle for their freedom. 他们不得不为自由而战。

Ben and Jack struggled together on the grass. 本和杰克在草地上扭打起来了。

（5） conflict 可指实际战争，但更多地指精神方面的冲突和斗争。

Personal ethics and professional ethics sometimes conflict.

个人道德与职业道德之间有时会冲突。

15. assure，ensure，insure，guarantee 都含有一定的“保证”之意。

（1） assure 表示向某人保证某事一定会发生（内含有让某人放心之意，以消除疑虑）。

assure sb. of sth. /assure sb. that...

He assured us of his ability to solve the problem. 他向我们保证他有能力解决这个问题。

The witness assured the judge that he was telling the truth. 证人向法官保证他说的都是事实。

（2） ensure “确定，保证” 确保某种行为一定会发生 ensure sth. /ensure that..。

I will ensure that the car arrives by six o'clock. 我保证汽车六点钟以前到。

This medicine will ensure you a good night's sleep. 这药能保证你睡一夜好觉。

（3） insure 意思是为防不测向保险公司付钱投保。

My house is insured against fire. 我的房子保了火险。

（4） guarantee 对某事物的品质或人的行为“提出担保”，对事物、商品等无质量、性能等方面的欺诈行为做出保证。

The cooker is guaranteed for five years. 本炊具保质期五年。

Can you guarantee me a job when I get there? 你可以确保我到那儿就可以找到一份工作吗?

16. bank，beach，coast，shore，seaside 这些名词均含有“岸”之意。

（1） bank 多指有一定坡度的河岸、湖岸或堤岸。

I take a walk along the bank every morning. 我每天早晨在岸上散步。

（2） beach 指倾斜度小，被海、湖或河水冲刷而有沙或卵石积存的地方。

On the beach of the lake a curious scene took place. 湖边呈现出一片罕见的景象。

（3） coast 地理学上的名词，专指被视为边界的沿海陆地的尽头。

The south coast is the warmest part of the country. 南海岸是这个国家最温暖的地区。

（4） shore 指紧靠大湖泊或海洋的陆地边缘或靠海的休养地。

There are lighthouses all along the eastern shore. 沿着东海岸都有灯塔。

（5） seaside 尤指疗养地、游览地区的海边。

Let's go to the seaside at the weekend! 让我们到海滨去度周末吧！

17. steam 蒸、boil 煮、roast 烤、bake 烘

（1） steam

n. 蒸汽 This machine goes by steam. 这台机器是蒸汽驱动的。

v. 蒸煮 Steam or microwave the vegetables until tender. 蒸或用微波炉加热蔬菜，直到蔬菜变软。

（2）boil

n. 沸腾，煮沸

Keep the kettle at the boil. 使水壶里的水保持沸腾。

v. 煮，通常是把东西加热到沸腾那种程度

The water was bubbling and boiling away. 水在咕嘟咕嘟沸腾着。

（3）roast *v.* /*n.* 烘烤，烤肉，一般用在外部加热的那种烘烤。

Truss the chicken before you roast it. 烤鸡前先将鸡扎紧。

Let's have a nice roast tonight. 我们今天晚上好好吃一顿烤肉吧。

（4）bake 是烘焙，主要是将物品内部水分蒸发掉，烤面包、饼干、砖块。

We are baking in the sun. 我们让太阳晒熟了。

18. 与“环境”有关的一类词。

（1）circumstance 多用于指“状况、情况”，常用复数

Maybe under these circumstances we may say that man can conquer nature. 也许在这样的情况下我们可以说人定胜天。

（2）surrounding 多用于指“人文环境”，*adj.* 周围的，附近的［*pl.*］周围的事物，环境

Chicago and the surrounding area 芝加哥及其周边地区

（3）environment 多用于指“自然环境”。

In order to transform their environment, he drew up the project with painstaking accuracy. 为了改造环境，他苦心孤诣地制订了这个计划。

（4）condition 常用词，用作单数形式，表示人或物目前所处的真实具体状态，尤指内在状态，可与 state 替用；用作复数形式时，笼统地表示一般状态。

The two-bedroom chalet is in good condition. 这个有两间卧室的小屋状况良好。

（5）background 也指背景声音，图画或布景的背景。

You should acquaint yourself with the background of all your pupils. 你应熟悉你所有学生的家庭背景。

19. whole，all，entire，total 这组形容词均含有“整体的，全部的”意思。

（1）whole 的意思比较广泛，指事物是完整的、无损的，通常置于定冠词或所有格之后，单数名词之前。

He has got a whole set of Shakespear's plays. 他得到一套完整的莎士比亚戏剧集。

（2）all 用法最广，几乎可以替代该组中的任何一个词，修饰可数名词时，表示“所有的”，修饰不可数名词时，表示“全部的”。

All his money went to pay the rent. 他的钱全部用来付租金了。

（3）entire 更强调事物的完整性，并常带有感情色彩。

There is an entire silence in the hall. 大厅里鸦雀无声。

（4）total 指计数或计量后得出的总数。

What is the total population? 人口总数是多少？

20. correct，accurate，exact 这组形容词均表示“正确的”。

（1）correct？指正确的，真实的。如：

He used correct English in his article, but his facts were incorrect. 他文章里的英语使用得很准确，但引用的事实是不确切的。

（2） accurate 指由于细心而精确地使某事符合事实。如：

He gave us an accurate report of the accident. 他向我们提供了事故的准确报告。

（3） exact 指不多不少，确切地与事实或标准相符。如：

What is the exact size of the table? 桌子的确切尺寸是多少？

21. profession，occupation，job，work，profession 这组名词均可表示“职业，工作”。

（1） profession “职业，专业”，指需要专门知识和特殊训练的职业，是受过相当高的教育才能获得的职业。

What made you chose lawer as a profession? 是什么使你选择律师作为职业的？

（2） occupation “职业，工作”，指一般人日常所从事的职业，工作的种类较为广泛。

Many middle-aged women have no fixed occupation. 许多中年妇女无固定职业。

（3） job “工作，活力”，一般用来指各种形式有收入，有报酬的工作。

The students are seeking for summer jobs. 这些学生在寻找暑假工作。

（4） work “工作”，是非常广泛的用语，指任何一种体力或脑力劳动的工作，为不可数名词。

I've a lot of work to do. 我有许多工作要做。

22. quiet，calm，silent，still，peaceful，这些形容词均含“平静的，无声无息”之意。

（1） quiet 普通用词，指没有喧闹、活动或骚乱的寂静状态。

They were quiet during the alert. 警戒期间他们保持安静。

（2） calm 普通用词，既可指天气、海洋等的平静状态，又可指人的镇定沉着、不慌乱，不受外界影响和情绪支配。

Such a boat is fit only for a calm sea. 这种船只适于在风平浪静的海上航行。

He answered with a calm voice. 他以平静的声音回答。

（3） silent 普通用词，指缄默不语或无声无息。

She emitted one shrill cry and then was silent. 她发出一声尖叫，然后沉默了。

（4） peaceful 普通用词，指一种不受外物扰乱和刺激的内在宁静或和平状态。

She repined for a peaceful life. 她渴望过平静的生活。

23. 与“费用、花费”有关的一类词。

（1） charge *v.*/*n.* 商品和服务所需的费用。

If you need shorten the trousers，additional fee will be charged. 如果您需要缩短裤子，将收取额外费用。

The charge varies from 5 yuan to 10 yuan. 费用从 5 元到 10 元不等。

（2） pay 经常构成短语 pay for 付款，为……花费，主语是人。

I pay them by the hour. 我按小时付给他们钱。

He pledged his gold watch to pay for her birthday gift. 为给她买生日礼物他抵押了他的金表。

（3） cost *v.*/*n.* 花费，使付出；费用，成本

常用句型：sth. cost sb. some money 某物花费某人的钱

This book costs me $5. 这本书花了我 5 美元。

Can you figure the total cost out? 你能把全部成本算出来吗？

（4） spend *v.* 度过，花费（时间、金钱）

常用句型：sb. spend some time/money（in） doing sth.

sb. spend some time/money on sth.

It is so easy to spend your entire life working for the bank. 花费你全部的生命在银行工作，这事确实很容易。

You'll spend a lot on clothes if you always follow the fashion. 你若总赶新潮，就会在衣着上花很多钱。

24. "agree" 构成的词组

agree with 同意，和……意见一致

She nodded to agree with me. 她点头同意了我的意见。

agree on 同意（双方就……达成一致）

The two countries have agreed on the date for next talk. 两国已就下次会谈的日期达成协议。

agree to 同意（上级、父母对下级、晚辈允许……）

My parents don't agree to my staying outside overnight. 我父母不同意我在外面过夜。

25. 表示"证实、确认"的一类词。

（1）confirm "（进一步）证实"、"确定"。指对已有的观点、说法、预测、猜疑等予以证实或确证。

The form requires that you confirm any delete request. 该表单要求您确认任何删除请求。

I can confirm the news. 我可以证实这个消息。

（2）prove "证明"，普通用词，泛指有充分的、可靠的事实证明某一观点或结论是正确的。可用作及物动词，后接宾语或宾语从句。

In order to prove his point he showed them the latest sales figures. 为了证明他的观点，他给他们看了最新的销售数字。

These facts prove that they are trying to pass fish eyes for pearls. 这些事实证明他们是在打算鱼目混珠。

（3）verify "证明"、"证实"、"核实"。多指通过实验、论证，查核证实某事是对的，也可表示"查证"、"核实"某事的真实性。

We must verify his figures. 我们必须把他的数字核实一下。

（4）assure 保证，使确信

常用结构：assure sb. that/assure sb. of sth. 确保

And I can assure you：there will be more. 我可以向你们保证：将会有更多的突发事件。

I can assure you of the reliability of the information. 我可以向你保证这一消息是可靠的。

26. 表示"持续、重复"的一类词。

（1）constant 多指习惯性的重复和不变的持续。

Even outstanding musicians require constant practice. 即使是好乐师也需经常练习。

（2）continual 强调重复或持续发生，但连续之间允许有间断。

The student needs to realize that learning is a continual process—one that is both enjoyable and necessary. 学生应该意识到学习是一个持续不断的过程——一个令人愉快而又必要的过程。

（3）continuous 语意最强，强调在时间和空间上没有间断。

On the other hand，your weight loss is in fact a continuous function，so each piece of data should be attached. 从另外一个角度来讲，你的减肥事实上是一个持续的过程，所以每天的数据都应该被附上。

（4）perpetual 指保持永久不变，没有中断的行为，永无止境地持续下去。有时用于贬义，指令人厌烦之事。

They hoped to live in perpetual happiness. 他们希望生活在永久幸福之中。

That means perpetual debt for as long as the system exists. 那意味着只要系统存在，就有永恒

的债务。

27. announce，declare 都含“明确地声明或宣布”的意思。

（1） announce 指“把人们关心或感兴趣的事正式公布于众”。

announce a sale 公布减价

（2） declare 经常用于正式场合，指“清楚，有力地，公开让人知道”。

He declared his intention to run for office. 他宣布了自己参加竞选的想法。

（3） announce 和 declare 后边一般是跟宾语和宾补。

They announced that the flight would be delayed. 广播通知，该航班将误点。

The chairman declare our team the winner. 主席宣布我们队获胜。

29. therefore，consequently，hence，then 这组副词均可表示“因此，所以”这种逻辑或因果关系。

（1） therefore 强调前面的原因就是后面的结果。如：

The house is smaller and therefore cheaper. 这房子小一点，所以便宜些。

（2） consequently? 可以指合理的推论，也可以表示影响或结果。如：

My car broke down and consequently I was late. 我的汽车坏了，所以我迟到了。

（3） hence 更强调前面原因的重要性，其后不跟从句。如：

The economic situation was very bad，hence the high unemployment rate. 经济形势很糟，所以失业率很高。

（4） then 在指逻辑顺序时，主要用于结论句中。

Come in by the back door，then no one will notice you. 从后门进来，那样没有人注意你。

30. 表示“耽误、推迟”的一类词。

（1） put off 延迟，推迟

In that case，we'll have to put off the sports meet till next Saturday. 如果那样的话，我们只好把运动会推迟到下个星期六了。

（2） postpone 延迟，推迟（指主观上的推迟，也指把某人和某事置于次要位置）；通常用于交货期或者约会，会议等等。（有一段比较长的时间去安排的）

Lacking money，they had to postpone their plan. 没有钱，他们只得推迟计划。

（3） delay 延误，延时的（客观上的推迟，比如天气使得航班或者出货晚了）

A tight schedule means we can't delay any longer. 一张紧凑的时间表表明我们不能再耽搁。

31. 表示“要求、请求”的一类词。

（1） demand 主语是人时，表示坚决要求，坚持要做某事，常用来指一个有权要求别人做某事的人，坚持要对方服从，不希望对方有相反的意见。主语是物时，指迫切需要。当用作动词时，后接不定式或宾语从句，不接动名词。

In production，we demand not only quantity but also quality. 我们的产品不但要求数量多，而且要求质量高。

He demanded to be told everything. 他要求把一切都告诉他。

I demand that John（should） go there at once. 我要求约翰立即到那里去。

（2） ask 一般用得比较多，比较通俗，语气也较客气。

I have something to ask you. 我有件事要问你。

（3） request 意为“恳求，请求”，指通过正式手续提出的要求，口气较缓和，态度很礼貌。

We did it at her request. 我们应她的要求做。

（4） require 表示按照法规、权利提出的要求或命令，指客观需要。

What clause do you require in the contract? 你要求在合同中订上什么条款?

32. estimate，appraise，assess，evaluate 这些词都表示对客体的重要性形成定论。

（1） estimate 暗示评价的主观性和不精确。

The gardener estimated that it would take him four hours to weed the garden. 园丁估计他给花园除草需要四个小时。

（2） appraise 表示专业水准的评估，名词形式为 appraisal。

He appraised the necklace at £ 1,000. 据他估计，项链价值 1 000 英镑。

（3） assess 表示为确定某物的应税价值而做出的权威估价。

assess housing demand regularly and accurately 定期和准确地评估房屋需求

（4） evaluate 表示在确定价值时经过了深思熟虑，不一定是金钱价值。

I cannot evaluate his ability. 我不能评价他的能力。

33. build，construct，erect，establish，set up 这些动词均有“建设，建立，建造”之意。

（1） build 普通用词，含义广泛，可指一切具体或抽象的建造或建立。

In order to do this you have to build up confidence. 为了做到这一点，你一定要建立起自信。

（2） construct 较正式用词，强调根据一定计划进行的规模较大，结构较复杂，要求较高技术的建造。

This adaptation is also the basis for the recipe construct. 这个改编版本也是配方构造的基础。

（3） erect 侧重指对高而垂直物的建造。使用不如 build 广泛。

They plan to erect an apartment house on that property. 他们计划在那片地产上建造一座公寓楼。

（4） establish 着重稳固地建成，可具体指国家、政府、学校或商店等的建立，也可指信仰、信用、名誉、法律、制度、规则等的建立。

It is impossible to establish democracy amid economic chaos. 经济秩序混乱不堪，是不可能建立民主的。

（5） set up 作“建立”用时，侧重于“开始”。可指具体或抽象的建立。

In remembrance of the battle，we set up a museum. 为纪念那次战役，我们建立了一座博物馆。

He set up in that way an alternative form of quantum mechanics. 他就是以这样的一种方式建立了量子力学的另一种形式。

（6） building，structure 这两个名词都表示“建筑物”。

building 普通用词，指任何建筑物，但不涉及建筑物的大小、风格以及所用材料。

It was rebuilt on the site of the old building. 它是在原来建筑物的旧址上重新建造的。

structure 结构，构造，侧重建筑物的构造形式。

The oil-bearing structure of the new oil field has been verified. 新油田的含油层结构已经探明。

34. 表示“否定、否认”的一类词。

（1） neglect 指没有给予或很少给予必要的注意或关心，尤指因粗心或遗忘而没有做某事。除了可接 sb. 或 sth. 之外，还可接 to do sth. 或 doing sth. 作其宾语。

Don't neglect minor issues. 不要忽略枝节问题。

He neglected to make repairs in his house. 他忘记了修理房子。

（2） ignore 指有意识地拒绝、不愿给予注意或故意不予理会。后面只可接 sb. 或 sth.，不可接不定式。

She saw him coming but she ignored him. 她看见他走过来，但是装作没看见。

(3) deny 表示“否定、否认”，当否认某件事时，就是否认它的真实性。其后可接名词、代词、动名词或 that 从句。其次，deny sb. sth. 结构，就是拒绝给予某人想要的东西。

He denied his daughter nothing and gave her whatever she wanted. 他从不拒绝女儿的任何要求，她要什么就给什么。

The president has denied having made any statement to that effect. 总统否认曾就那件事做过任何声明。

35. 表示“拒绝”的一类词。

(1) decline 婉言拒绝，谢绝，相当于 refuse politely，比较正式，后接 sth.，to do sth.。

They declined our offer of help with thanks. 他们谢绝了我们提供的帮助。

(2) refuse 语气比 decline 强，含有非常坚决地、不客气地拒绝的意味。其后接名词或代词、不定式。

She refused to marry him, for she didn't love him at all. 她拒绝嫁给他，因为她一点儿也不爱他。

(3) reject 指强烈地拒绝接受，通常包含否定与对抗的意味。

Our proposal was firmly rejected. 我们的提议被断然否决了。

36. 表示“打断、干扰”的一类词。

(1) interrupt

vt. 打断（正在说话或动作的人），中断，妨碍，插嘴

vi. 打断（别人的讲话或行动）*n.*（发给电脑的）中断信号

Don't interruptme when I am busy. 我正忙的时候请不要来打扰我。

interfere with 干扰，干涉；妨碍；触动或弄坏；乱动；与……抵触

But that is your affair; we do not interfere with your problems. 但那是你自己的事情。我们不愿意干涉你的问题。

interferein *vt.* 干涉，干预

I hope my parents don't try to interfere in my choice of career. 我希望我的父母在我的职业的选择方面尽量不要干涉。

(2) disturb

1) 扰乱；搅乱；使骚动

Wind disturbed the water. 风吹皱水面。

2) 妨碍；打扰；干扰

Please don't disturb me while I'm working. 当我工作时，请不要打扰我。

3) 使焦虑；使心烦；使烦恼

I have heard some bad news which has disturbed me very much. 我听到了一些坏消息，这使我很不安。

37. pull, draw, drag 三者都可表示“拉”。

(1) 如果表示将某物拖动了位置，用 draw 或 pull 均可以。如：

The horse was drawing [pulling] a cart. 马拉着一辆大车。

He drew [pulled] her out of bed. 他把她从床上拖了起来。

(2) 如果没有位置变化，通常用 pull。如：

He pulled the door open. 他拉开了门。

He pulled her hair. 他拽着她的头发。

(3) 与 draw 或 pull 相比，drag 侧重指用力拖或拉。如：

They had to drag loads. 他们得拖很重的东西。

He dragged the body out of the river. 他从河中把死尸拉出来。

38. 表示“讨论、辩论、争论”的一类词。

（1）discussion 程度最轻，也就是气氛最轻松，一般用于课堂、公司工作团队、甚至是朋友或家庭成员之间，对某件事情的看法的表达，类似于聊天。

Their case is now under discussion. 他们的案件现在正在讨论中。

（2）debate 程度就有些重了，语言色彩也更正式，一般就是正式场合，如：辩论会、研讨会、学术会议、专题性国际会议、临时召开的针对性会议等等。使用这个词语时，通常存在双方比较明显的观点差异，话题也是比较正式严肃的。

The theatre's future is a subject of considerable debate. 剧院的前途是一个颇具争议的问题。

（3）argument 指辩论双方均以事实或理由来说服对方的辩论。

She got into an argument with the teacher. 他和老师争论了起来。

His argument is very convincing. 他的论点很有说服力。

（4）conflict 指双方坚持己见、互不妥协，怀有敌意的争论，多暗示分歧极为严重，有时用语言无法解决，只得诉诸武力。

The hours of those two exams conflict. 那两门测验的时间互相抵触。

（5）dispute 普通用词，侧重指长时间、言词激烈、针锋相对的争辩。

Mother interposed in the dispute between my brother and me. 母亲介入了我与哥哥之间的争论。

（6）quarrel 普通用词，既可指言辞激烈的争吵，也可指温和的言辞上的不和。

They should resolve that quarrel on its merits.

他们应该按其价值解决那个争论。

39. 表示“展示、揭露”的一类词。

（1）demonstrate 证明，展示（才能，品质，感情）

How can I demonstrate to you that my story is true? 我怎么才能向你证明我的话是真的呢?

（2）display 陈列，展示

Department stores display their goods in the windows. 百货商店把商品陈列在橱窗里。

（3）reveal 揭露，所跟的名词多为一些有关秘密的、不可告人的东西。

I should be glad to give you any help if you reveal your thoughts to me. 如果你把你的想法透露给我，我愿意尽全力帮助你。

40. saving，economical，sparing 三者都有“节约的”的意思。

（1）saving 节省，常用结构有：

energy saving 节能，能源节省

cost saving *n.* 节省费用；成本节约

time saving 节约时间

labor saving 人力节约

saving account 储蓄账户

space saving［计］节约空间

money saving 省钱；储蓄

life saving 救生；水上救生

tax saving 节税；税收节减

fuel saving 节约燃料

saving face 挽回面子，爱面子

（2）economical 一般就是不浪费金钱（或时间、燃料等）的节约

I want most economical packing. 我要最经济的包装。

（3）sparing 作节约讲的时候有种主观上节约的感觉，意思为“慎用，俭省的”。

Doctors now advise only sparing use of such creams. 现在，大夫建议这种乳霜要慎用。

He is very sparing with his money. 他用钱很省。

41. 表示“教授、指导”的一类词。

(1) teach 最普通用词，含义广泛。指直接教某人知识或技能等，侧重传播知识和帮助应用知识。

She volunteered to teach in the school. 她自愿在学校教书。

(2) instruct 与 teach 含义很接近，但语体较正式。指系统、详细、精心地传播知识，侧重教授与指示。

Students can instruct one another, can mentor one another, can teach one another. 学生可以互相指导，互相学习，相互引导。

(3) educate 较正式用词，指教育，内容比 teach 广泛，侧重动机或结果，或对潜在能力的开发。

It takes patience to educate children. 教育儿童须要耐心。

(4) coach 指对个人或小组等进行辅导、训练或补课。

He is now being coached by a famous pianist. 他现在正由一位著名的钢琴家进行辅导。

(5) train 指训练与培养。

It is difficult to train an unruly boy. 教育一个不守规矩的男孩儿是件不容易的事。

(6) tutor 指进行个别教学或课外辅导。

Most parents have no time to tutor their children. 大部分家长没有时间辅导孩子。

42. 近形、近义词比较：

(1) affect 动词，指“产生的影响之大足以引起反应”，着重“影响”的动作，有时含有“对……产生不利影响”的意思。

This article will affect my thinking. 这篇文章将会影响我的思想。

(2) effect 可作名词，动词指“实现”、“达成”，着重“造成”一种特殊的效果。

This book effected a change in my opinion. 这本书使我的看法起了变化。

(3) influence 名词指“通过说服、举例等对行动、思想、性格等产生不易觉察到的、潜移默化的影响”。

Influenced by a high-school biology teacher, he took up the study of medicine. 在一位中学生物教师的影响下，他从事医学研究。

43. 义近词比较：

(1) effective 意思是“有效的”，强调一件事情的结果，表示结果很好。

The medicine is effective for knocking colds. 这种药祛除感冒很有效。

(2) efficient 意思是“有效率的”，强调一件事情的过程，表示过程很快。

She is an efficient secretary. 她是个有效率的秘书。

(3) valid 法律概念意义上的“有效”，或指理论，观点，结论等“能站得住，正确的”。

This train ticket is valid for three days. 这张车票 3 日内有效。

(4) beneficial 有益的，有利的

And make better use of this policy beneficial to both people and the state. 使这项利国利民的政策更好地发挥作用。

44. 表示“选择”的一类词。

(1) choose “选择，挑选”，普通用语。

We have many patterns in stock for you to choose from. 我们有多种现存的式样供你选择。

Choose any one you like. 任你挑选一个。

（2） select 挑选，精选，侧重于从同类的许多东西中仔细辨别后选择，从中挑选最合适的。

You can select any one of them for testing. 您可以选择其中任何一个进行测试。

（3） pick 挑选，是指仔细地而又苛刻地选择，多指挑选有形的东西。

How do you pick one library over another? 您怎么选择这个库，而不选另一个？

How do you pick the right one? 怎样选择一个正确的方案？

45. 表示“电”的一类词。

（1） electricity 电，电流，是四个单词里唯一的名词。

The electricity is off, so we must reset it. 电流切断了，我们必须把它重新接通。

（2） electronic 电子的，电子学的，形容词。

The price of electronic products slump recently. 最近以来，电子产品的价格暴跌。

（3） electrical 关于电的，与电有关的，形容词。

electrical engineering 电工学

electrical apparatus 电器

（4） electric 意思是“带电的，发电的，电动的”，也是形容词。

an electric generator 发电机

an electric iron 电熨斗

46. 表示“扩张、蔓延”的一类词。

（1） expand 主要是“扩大、膨胀”的意思

You should see your stomach expand and contract. 你应该看到你的腹部扩张和收缩。

（2） spread 主要是“蔓延”的意思，要搭配 out 才能表示“张开、伸长扩延”的意思。

The disease was spread in the small town. 这种疾病曾在这个小镇传播蔓延过。

They depend on instinct and spread out. 它们依靠本能，展开队形。

（3） extend 延长、扩大（范围、时间、距离）；伸开（身体某部分）

The school is extending the range of subjects taught. 学校正在拓宽授课学科的范围。

Our playing fields extend as far as those trees. 我们的操场延伸到那些树前。

He extended his hand to the new hand employee. 他伸出手来和新员工握手。

extend one's business 扩大其营业

（4） stretch 主要是“拉长、伸长、延伸”的意思

Vast meadows stretch to the east. 辽阔的草场向东伸展。

47. 表示“证明、证据”的一类词。

（1） proof 指足以直接证明某事为某事实的依据，侧重作为充分证据所导致的结果。

The proof was fished up from old papers. 这个证据是从旧文件中搜寻到的。

（2） evidence 普通用词，在法律上指能起证明作用的，如：证明、公证书以及所有的实物东西等。在生活中指任何一样可证明某一件事的真实性的东西。

From the evidence, he must be guilty. 根据此证据，他肯定有罪。

48. 表示“交换、转移”的一类词。

（1） transfer 搬迁（转到新地方）；转学；转会（尤指职业足球）；转移，转交（财产，权力等）；换乘交通工具等。

The film studio is transferring to Hollywood. 这家电影制片厂正搬往好莱坞。

He transferred to UCLA after his freshman year. 他读完大学一年级后，转学到加利福尼亚洛杉矶分校。

He intends to transfer the property to his daughter. 他打算把财产转让给女儿。

Passengers are transferred from the airport to the hotel by taxi. 旅客由机场改乘出租车到旅店。

transfer sth. from... to.... 转移（某物）从……到……

The content owners and providers can specify whether you can transfer it from one device to another. 内容所有者和提供者可以指定用户是否能将内容从一个设备传递到另一个设备。

（2）convert 转变，改建，改装，改变信仰

convert sth.（into sth.）

I convert waste into wealth. 我将废物转变为财富。

（3）replace... with... 用……代替

You can swap out one system and replace it with another. 您可以交换一个系统并且用其它的系统替换它。

（4）exchange..... for... 交换，兑换

She got the building owner to let her clean apartments and do other work in exchange for rent. 她说服房东让她做清洁和其他工作，以此来交换房租。

49. 表示"破坏、毁坏"的一类词。

（1）destroy 多指彻底地、毁灭性地破坏，含导致无用，不能或很难再修复的意味。

Destroy the old world and build a new one. 破坏旧世界，建设新世界。

（2）ruin 多指因外部原因而受到严重破坏或毁灭，侧重破坏的彻底性，也可用于引申意义。

The tower collapsed in a heap of ruin. 这座塔倒塌了，成为一堆废墟。

（3）wreck 残骸（侧重指船只、车辆、房屋等受到严重破坏或完全毁坏）

The car was a worthless wreck after the collision. 撞车以后，那辆车成了毫无价值的残骸。

（4）damage 多指对无生命物体的损害，造成降低价值、破坏功能等后果。

The customer will be reimbursed for any loss or damage. 顾客受到的一切损失或损害将一律得到赔偿。

（5）spoil 溺爱；变坏，腐败

She spoiled her grandson. 她把她的孙子宠坏了。

Olives, ketchup and even mayo are all so highly acidic they'll dry out before they spoil. 橄榄、番茄酱甚至蛋黄酱都是高酸性的，在腐败前它们都会变干。

50. 表示"希望、期望"的一类词。

（1）expect 意思是期待某事或某人可能的发生或出现。

You can expect us for lunch. 你可以等我们一起吃午饭。

（2）anticipate 有时被用作 expect 的同义词，但它不仅仅是期望这个意思，有时它指提前采取行动，来阻止预料中某事的发生或在一项要求或愿望说出之前使它得到满足。anticipated the attack and locked the gates 预见会有袭击并锁上门

（3）hope 意思是热切期望并对获得所期待之物的可能性方面有一定的信心。

I hope to see you soon. 我希望不久就见到你。

参 考 文 献

[1] 薄冰. 薄冰大学英语语法 [M]. 太原：山西教育出版社，2003.
[2] 魏俊忠. 英语应用能力考试 [M]. 北京：北京交通大学出版社，2008.
[3] 柳青军，隋志娟. 实用英语应用能力考试教程 [M]. 北京：高等教育出版社，2010.
[4] 马丁·曼瑟. 英语词汇用法辨析手册 [M]. 丁大刚，等译. 上海：世界图书出版公司，2007.
[5] L G 亚历山大. 朗文英语语法 [M]. 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2013.



应广大考生的强烈要求，作为拥有强大师资力量、严格管理模式、先进授课系统、专业辅导资料，并广受考生认可的专升本品牌辅导机构——师大教育（济南市教育局批准备案）特组织省内专升本入学考试辅导名师，依据最新“山东省普通高等教育专升本考试要求”，本着为考生指明重点、解决难点、阐释疑点、扫除盲点的目的，编著了这套考试用书。本套丛书具有时效新、紧扣大纲要点、知识系统全面、重难点简明清晰等特点，是广大山东考生专升本考试用书的首选。

师大教育总部咨询电话：0531-58669199　58619399
全国咨询热线：400-0531-917
官方QQ：1143355777　1143366777
青岛咨询电话：18561726989　QQ：2579495
网址：www.sdshengben.com

ISBN 978-7-111-60293-4
策划编辑◎张金奎 / 封面设计◎张静
上架指导 考试
定价：29.80元
ISBN 978-7-111-60293-4